

Teach yourself **URDU** in two months

Prof. Aziz-ur- Rahman

Edited by : Khalil Azizi



IDARA ISHA'AT-E-DINIYAT (P) LTD.

TEACH YOURSELF URDU IN TWO MONTHS

Prof. Aziz-ur-Rahman

Edited by: Khalil Azizi

IDARA ISHA'AT-E-DINIYAT (P) LTD.

168/2 Jha House, Hazrat Nizamuddin

New Delhi-110013 (India)

Tel. 4616786, 4631786 Fax : 4632786

All Rights Reserved ©

ISBN 81-7101-186-1

Teach yourself Urdu In Two Months

by
Prof. Aziz-ur-Rahman

Translated by
Khalil Azizi

First Edition 1995

Published by
IDARA ISHA'AT-E-DINIYAT (P) LTD.
168/2, Jha House, Hazart Nizamuddin
New Delhi-110 013 (India)
Tel.:4616786,4631786 Fax : 4632786

Typesetting by :
DM Computer Designer & Composer
Delhi Cantt 110010, Tel. 3293825

Printed at
Johar Offset Printers, Maujpur, Delhi

CONTENTS

PART I

URDU ALPHABET AND SYSTEM OF TRANSLITERATION	1
Alphabet	2
Different forms of letters	3
Pronunciation	7
Pronunciation of Vowels	8
Short Vowels	8
Long Vowels	9
Madd : Tashdid	11
Jazab (Amputation)	12
Hamza (Hyphen) : Tanwin (Adverbial n)	12
He ()	13
Nasal Nun (u—n)	14
Aspirated Consonants	14

PART II

THE ARTICLES	
Nouns	16
Preposition	17
Interrogatives	19
Possessive Pronouns; Adverbs	21
Pronouns	22

PART III**THE NOUN**

Nouns, Gender, Number, Case	26
Oblique Singular and Plural	29
Past Auxiliary Verbs	34
Pronouns, Declensions of	35
Accusative case	37
Demonstrative Pronouns	37
"To be" Conjugation of the Verb	38
Genitive Case "k ā, kē, kī", Use of	40
Adjectives	45
Interrogative and Relative Pronouns	52
Substantives used as Postpositions	55
Adverbs	62
Conjunction; Interjection	63
Verbs, The Infinitive	64
Imperative and Prohibition	66
"To" The Preposition, Uses of	71
Present Participle	71
Present and Past Imperfect Tense	73
Formation of a Sentence	74
Past Participle and the Past Tenses	77
Past Tenses of Transitive Verbs	82
Transitive Verbs that do not take "n ē"	86
Past Conditional Tenses	87
Aorist Tense	90
Future Tense	92
Past Conjunctive	95
"Ā pnā", Uses of	97
"Ā p", Uses of	99
Days of the week; directions	101
Verbal Noun	101
Infinitive of Purpose	103
Passive Voice	105
Direct and indirect Narration	107
Participle Adjectives	111

PART IV

VERBS FOLLOWING PARTICULAR RULES

"Saknā" and "Chukn ā" The Verbs, Uses of	116.
"Chā hnā" — to wish; to want, etc.	118
"Chā hiē" Use of	119
"Parna" and "Hona" The Verbs, Uses of	122
"Milnā" The Verb, Uses of	124
"Lagnā", "P ānā" and "D ēnā", Uses of	126
Habitual Tense	129
Continual Tenses, Uses of	131
"Dekhn ā", "Sunn ā", "Pakarn ā" etc. Uses of	133
Seasons	135

PART V

USES OF SOME PARTICULAR WORDS

"W ālā" Uses of	138
"Hī" Uses of	140
"To have" The Verb, Uses of	142

PART VI

NARRATIVES STORIES FOR TRANSLATION

Stories for Translation into Urdu	146
Intensive Verbs	151
Railways Journey (Roman Urdu)	156
Numerals	160
The Ordinal and Fractional Numbers	162

PART VII

USEFUL SENTENCES

(1) Food	165
(2) Time	167
(3) Miscellaneous Sentences	168

PART VIII

VOCABULARY

(English-Urdu)	172
(Urdu-English)	200

PREFACE

The chief object of this book is to meet a beginner's wants, and to remove the difficulties, which are not explained in most other books.

Points which to a learned writer may seem too easy to require an explanation, often present a great difficulty to a beginner.

When starting to learn Urdu a beginner has to face several difficulties, *e.g.*,

- (i) The pronunciation;
- (ii) The order of words in a sentence;
- (iii) Formation of the various plurals;
- (iv) Agreement of the Adjective and Verbs with the Nouns in gender, number and case.

Now, if a beginner (of elementary education) is taught and expected to observe all the above rules at the very beginning, he naturally gets confused, and regards the language as too tedious to be learnt and gives it up as a failure.

During his 30 years' experience, the author had come to the conclusion that it is best to master one difficulty at a time, in particular the art of putting words in the right order, otherwise the agreement of words will be confused.

The following rules have been observed in this book;

- (1) The second chapter teaches only the order of words in a sentence. The beginner, having mastered the rule, can then confidently proceed with the grammar.

- (2) In order to refresh the student's memory, the English grammar terms are explained as they occur in the book.
- (3) Under each sentence, in the examples, the English words are put in the order in which they are to be translated into Urdu.
- (4) The examples to every rule are arranged, in such a way that, if carefully studied, they will answer any question which may arise in the mind of a student, when doing the exercise concerned.
- (5) Under each rule two exercises are given, one to be translated from Urdu into English, and the other from English into Urdu.
- (6) After every five or six rules, revisional exercises, composed of mixed sentences on the preceding rules, are given to ensure that the student remembers those rules before he proceeds any further.

In short, neither effort nor pain has been spared to make this book clear, useful, and as simple as possible. To ensure this, each rule in the book has been successfully tried on a considerable number of promising pupils, while studying under the author.

In conclusion, I wish to thank those who have patronized and shown appreciation of my humble efforts in producing this book.

Aziz-ur-Rahman

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Bismil-la-hir-Rahman-ir-Raheem

*I begin this work in the name of Allah, the
Beneficent, the Merciful.*

PART 1

URDU ALPHABETS AND SYSTEM OF TRANSLITERATION

Urdu, like Persian and Arabic, is written from right to left and the letters consist of strokes or strokes and dots. At the end of a word or when standing alone many letters end with a flourish. Learners should, first of all, try to acquire a complete mastery over the 'Detached Form' of the Alphabet. Those desirous of speaking only should start the book from page 17. For pronunciation, however, they will have to refer to the following chart and 'Guide to Pronunciation' on Page 7.

Name	Detached Form	Transliteration and Pronunciation	Name	Detached Form	Transliteration and Pronunciation
Alif	ا	A. as A in far	Sheen	ش	Sh. as Sh in Shut
Bē	ب	B. as in English	Suād	ص	S. as S in Sit
Pē	پ	P. as in English	Zuād	ض	Z. as Z in Zeal
Tē	ت	T. a soft dental like in three	Toē	ط	T. as T in Tie
Tē	ٹ	T. hard as T in Tin—tack	Zoē	ظ	Z. as Z in Zeal
Sē	ث	S. as S in sit	Ain	ع	A. guttural (consonant)
Jeem	ج	J. like J in Jail	Ghain	غ	Gh. as G in the German word Segen.
Chē	چ	Ch. like Ch in Church	Fē	ف	F. as F in Fun
Hē	ح	H. like H in Huge	Quaf	ق	Q. guttural, like Ch in Stuck
Khē	خ	Kh guttural, as Ch in I och	Kāf	ک	K. as in English
Dāl	د	D. soft, as Th in Thee	Gāf	گ	G. as G in Give
Dāl	ڈ	D. hard, as D in Dog	Lām	ل	L. as L in Lane
Zāl	ذ	Z. like Z in Zeal	Meem	م	M. as in English
Rē	ر	R as in English	Noon	ن	N. as in English
Rē	ڑ	Re, a hard R	Wāo	و	W. O. U. as in English
Zē	ز	Z. as in English	Hē	ہ	H. as H in Hot
Zhē	ژ	Zh. as in Azure	Yē	ی	Y. as Y in yad
Seen	س	S like S in. Sit	Yē	ے	E. as Ey in They

DIFFERENT FORMS OF LETTERS

All letters, with a few exceptions, have four forms, i.e. initial, medial, final and independent. The independent form is also called 'the Detached Form'. To write a word all the letters used are joined to one another. The essential part of the letter, however, remains unchanged as is shown here :—

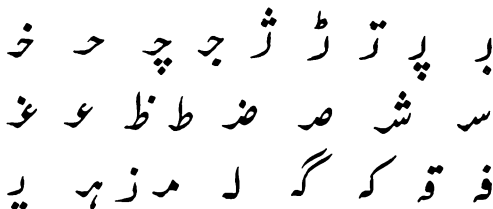
Detached form	initial	medial	final
ب	ب	ب	ب

Detached Form

ا	ب	پ	ت	ٹ	ث
ج	چ	ح	خ	د	ڈ
ر	ڑ	ز	ژ	س	ش
ص	ض	ط	ظ	ع	غ
ف	ق	ک	گ	ل	م
					ن
					و
					ہ
					ے

INITIAL FORM

To obtain the initial form strike off the horizontal lines and circles of the detached form, as,



IMPORTANT : Since the following nine letters have neither a circle nor a horizontal line they do not change except in the case of the final form. They are always joined to the preceding letter but not to the one following. All letters when used after them are written in the initial or detached form as the case may be.



MEDIAL FORM

The medial form is obtained by adding a connecting line to the right side of the initial form, as.

بر پر تر ٹر ثر ج چ ح خ
 سر شر صر ضر ط ظ ع غ
 فق ق ک گ ل م ن ہ یر

FINAL FORM

The final form is obtained by adding the same connecting line to the beginning of the detached form.

ما ب پ ت ٹ ث ج چ
 ح خ د ڈ ذ ر ٹ ر ث ر س ش
 ص ض ط ظ ح خ ف
 ق ک گ ل م ن ہ ہ ی ے

Exercise 1(a)

Read and copy the following words:

sab سب jab جب	bas بس ham ہم
das دس <u>khat</u> خط	

Translation :— kab, jab, rab, das, nal, gaz, khat, tal.

Exercise 1(b)

sabaq سبق safar سفر	qadam قدم qalam قلم
namak نمک qasam قسم	

Translation :— qadam, sabad, namak, qasam, Chaman latak, nazar, rabar

Exercise 1(c)

batan بدن badan بدن	madad मदद kân کان
kamar کمر chār چار	

Translation :— sāt, tāj, chār, madad, kamar, kân, pân, mām, nām.

PRONOUNCIATION

1. ا alif at the commencement of a word is a mere prop for the letter hamza and has no sound of itself.
2. ت and د (te and dal) are softer and more dental than their English equivalents "T" and "D", the tip of the tongue should touch the upper front teeth when these letters are pronounced.
3. ر re is pronounced distinctly like the French "r".
4. ڑ Re has a heavy sound and when pronouncing it, the tip of the tongue must be turned much farther back.
5. ث s, س s, ص s are in Urdu homophones. They are all pronounced like "s" in sit.
6. ج "G", is always pronounced as "g" in "germ" and never as "g" in "game".
7. چ "Ch" is pronounced as "ch" in "church" and not as "ch" in "chorus".
8. ح h is often pronounced like "h" but should be more guttural than the "h" in huge.
9. ز z, ز z, ض z, ظ z are in Urdu homophones and are pronounced like the "z" in zeal.
10. ع (') is a strong guttural (consonant).
11. غ gh is a guttural "g" accompanied by a rattling. The "r" in the French grasseye is an approximation only.
12. ق q is a strong guttural, like the "ck" in stuck when pronounced in the throat.
13. ہ "h" as in hand.

PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

"a"	is	pronounced	as	"a"	in	Mental
"ā"	"	"	"	"ā"	"	Part
"ai"	"	"	"	"a"	"	Bank
"au"	"	"	"	"au"	"	Paul
"ē"	"	"	"	"e"	"	Prey
"ī"	"	"	"	"i"	"	Pit
"ī"	"	"	"	"i"	"	Fatigue
"o"	"	"	"	"o"	"	Home
"u"	"	"	"	"u"	"	Put
"ū"	"	"	"	"u"	"	June

SHORT VOWELS

There are three short vowels : Zabar (—ُ) Zer (—ِ) and Pesh (—َ) which in English are represented by a short "a", short "i" and short "u" respectively. In practice they are seldom written or printed.

1. Zabar To express the short "a" zabar is used over a letter as ba, ب na, ن par پ and is pronounced like the "u" in the English word "gun".

moment	pal	پل	پل	grief	gham	غم	غم
all	sab	سب	سب	armpit	baghal	بغل	بغل
cyc-brow	palak	پلک	پلک				

2. Zer. The short "i" is expressed by using zer under a letter, khi خِ as li لِ It is pronounced as "i" in "fin".

heart	dil	دل دل	pin	pin	پن پن
day	din	دن دن	what	kia	کیا کیا
book	kitab	کتاب کتاب			

3. Pesh. Similarly, the short “u” is expressed by putting a pesh over a letter, as mu, ju, and is pronounced like the “u” in “put”.

bridge	pul	پُل پُل	you	tum	تُم تُم
God	Khuda	خدا خدا	Sun	suraj	سورج سورج
bad	bura	بُرا بُرا			

Exercise II

Translation : pal, ghap, gham, hal, samar, badan kân, sâg, bâgh, châl, jo, so gir, sir Khuda, kitâb, kiâ, turm, din, dil, sât, nâch, shân.

LONG VOWELS

1. Alif ا Wao و and Ye ی are used in urdu as long vowels.
2. Wao و gives the sound of ‘w au, u, and o, whereas ye ی stands for y, ai, i, and e.
3. When و and ی are used at the beginning of a word or syllable it gives the sound of w’ and y’ as

wahshat وحشت yaklakht یکلخت

Example

Initial	Medial	Final
ا o, as اوس os	و o, as, موٹا motā	لو lo
اُ au, as, اور aur	و au, as, فوج fauj,	جو jau
اُو ū, as, اُون un	و u, as, حُب khūb,	چاٹو chāqū
ای e, as, ایلی Elchi	یہ e, as, مین mēn	ے e, as, بارے barē
ای ai, as, ایسا aisā	یہ ai, as, مین maiñ	ے ai, as, hai
ای ī, as, ایجاد ijad	یہ ī as, یقین yaqīn	ی ī, as, larkī,

Exercise

Read and copy the following:—

حَوْض - فَوْج - کَوْن - چَوک - اَوْر - خَوْف - پَیڑ - سَیڑ - بَیْل - ے -
 نَے - خَیڑ - بَیڑ - اَیٹ - جَیٹ - دَیٹ - دَیڑ - بَیڑ - سَبَب -
 شَیر - بُول - تُوپ - دُول - مَور - شَور - اُدس - سُوچ -
 سَورج - چُوڑی - مُولی - آلو - بابُو - چاٹو - خاٹو - جوتا -
 چُونَا - مَورَت - صَورَت -

Translation: Hauz, fauz, mauj, kaun, chauk, aur, khauf, pair, sair, bail, ley, ney, khair, bair, ēk, jēb, dēg, dēr, bēr, sēb, shēr, bol, top, dol, mor, shor, os, soch, sūraj, chūrī, mūlī, ālū, bābū, chāqū, khālū, jūtā, chūnā, mūrat, sūrat.

MADD. (ء)

The sign of madd, if used over alif I expresses long "a" in the beginning of a word, as آج

Exercise

Read and write the following:—

آں۔ آس۔ آب۔ آج۔ آما۔ آغا۔ آقا۔ آنا۔ آگ۔ آم۔
 آج آپ کیا کر رہے ہیں۔ جب تک سانس تب تک آس۔ آما نہیں ہے۔
 آرا کہاں ہے۔ آگ جل رہی ہے۔ یہ آم خراب ہے۔ آدمی
 بازار میں ہے۔

Translation: — ām, ānā, āg, āqā. āp, ān, ās, āj. āra, ātā. ālū.

Tashdid (و)

Instead of doubling any letter put tashdid on it, as آبا ab-bā, آما am-mān. but in the case of verbs the 'n' is repeated as, ماننا mān-na, جاننا jan-nā.

Exercise

ہلا۔ گتا۔ گنا۔ چٹو۔ چلو۔ بٹی۔ پٹی۔ حجام۔ حجام
 گتا حجام میں چلا گیا۔ حجام نے اسے مارا۔ موٹا ہلا بازار
 میں ہے۔ چٹو کشتی میں ہے۔ لڑکی پٹی ہے۔ بٹی اُونچی کر دے۔
 چلو میں پانی دے۔

Translation : haj-jām, bil-lī, ul-lū, bil-lā, kut-tā, bat-tī, sach-chī, chap-pu.

JAZM (AMPUTATION)

There must always be a woven between two consonants. If there is no sign of zer or pesh, they should be read with zabar (short a), as گَرْمُ garm, سَرْدُ sard.

But if this jazm is placed over the middle of two consonants it indicates that here is no short vowel, but that consonants are sounded, as عِلْمُ ilm, جِسْمُ jism.

Exercise

Read and copy of the following :

مُرغُ - فَرشُ - شَمْعُ - بَرخُ - رَرخُ - عِلْمُ - جِسْمُ - گَرْمُ - سَبْزُ - سَرْدُ - سُرْخُ -
سُرْخُ - مِرْخُ - تیز - ہوتی ہے - موسم - سَرْدُ ہے - فَرشُ - گِلا ہے - شَمْعُ - خاموش ہے - عِلْمُ
بڑی دولت ہے - اُس کا جسم - گَرْمُ ہے - رَسپاہی کے پاس - تلواریں ہے -

Translation : farsh, shama, garm, sabz, sard. sūrkh, ilm, mirch, jism.

HAMZA (HYPEN)

1. Hamza is in Urdu generally the equivalent of a hyphen, as : Fā-eda نَامَہ benefit; jā-o جاؤ go. When in a word, one syllable ends in a vowel and the next begins with one, the mark عَم is placed over the second vowel to express short a. e, i, o, u, as, پَاؤں pā-oñ, جَاؤں jā-ūñ.
2. If three vowels are used together, the middle vowel is replaced by hamza and takes a loop in the word, as, گَائے gā-ē, رُو-ی rū-ī, مَکائی makā-ī.
روئی
3. Even when one of the vowels is short, hamza is used, as,
گائی, گئی gayī. کائی kayī.

Exercise

سُونِی - کوئی - کئی - گئی - آؤ - جاؤ - جباؤ - سناؤ - دیے - بئے -
چائے - گائے - دائیں - بائیں -

Transliteration:— gāē, chāē, tāsir, fāeda, kayī, gayī, judāī, gūnjāish.

TANWĪN (ADVERBIAL N)

The sign over | (alif) expresses the adverbial 'n' as, مثلاً maslan,
حکم hukman, etc.

مثلاً۔ ارادتا۔ فوراً۔ اتفاقاً۔ قریباً۔ محکمہ۔

Exercise

Transliteration:— qariban, ittefaqan, fauran, irādatan, maslan, hukman.

ہ (HE)

There are two forms of ہ (he): (i) Butterfly h and (ii) the looped h

(b) The butterfly h ہ is used either in the beginning or in the middle of a word, but looped h ھ is only used before a vowel, as, پہاڑ

(c) When no vowel sound intervenes between the h and the consonant preceeding it, the butterfly h ہ is used. Letters coupled with the butterfly h are called aspirated compounds.

Note the following :— گھر ghar, کھڑکی khirkī, بھالو bhālū, جھم jham,
چھوکر chhokrā, پھل phal, etc.

(d) ہ When it comes at the end of a word and is immediately preceded by zabar (short a), it is silent and is treated as a short a. as,
تماشا tamasha, مردہ murda.

(e) Both the medial and final forms are used if an h, is expressed at the end of a word, as, ہاتھ hath, کچھ kuchh.

Note :— A looped h ھ sometimes takes another loop under it, as, ہونہا hona,
پہنچنا pahunchna.

ن (NASAL^{UN}NUN)

When it comes after a long vowel, the has (ن) a nasal sound. At the end of a word, however, it is written without a dot, as گھاس ghāñs, مرغیاں murghīāñ,

- māñ. ماں

Exercise

پانچ - کانچ - رنگ - جنگ - ماں - ہاں - کہاں - یہاں - میں - ہیں -
ہیں - منہ - سانپ - دانت -

جنگ کیا رنگ ہے ؟ ماں کے ہاں کون ہے ؟ کہاں میں وہاں گیا
تھا - میرا بھائی کہاں ہے ؟ آج یہاں گرمی ہے - میں پہاڑ
پر جاؤں گا - سانپ کے دانت نہیں ہیں - اُس کا منہ بہت چھوٹا
ہے - آج منہ برس رہا ہے -

Transliteration:— dāñt, sāñp, pāñch, kāñch, rañg, jañg, māñ, hāñ, kāhāñ, yāhāñ, mūñh, mēñh.

ASPIRATED CONSONENTS

بھ bh as, بھالو bhalu

پھ ph as, پھول phul

تھ th as, تھال thal

ٹھ th as, ٹھیلہ thela

جھ jh as, جھول jhol

چھ chh as, چھری churi

دھ dh as, دھم dham

ڈھ dh as, ڈھال dhal

ڑھ rh as, گڑھ garh

کھ kh as, کھانا khana

گھ gh as, گھر ghar

لھ lh as, دولہا dulha

Exercise

Read and copy the following:—

بھوک - پھل - پھول - چھڑی - بھارو - ٹھیلہ - ٹھیلہ -
 مکتی کا بھٹا - ریل کا ٹھیلہ - زہرہ کا بھائی - رتن کی بھارو - مداری کا ٹھیلہ -
 گلاب کا پھول - زور کی بھوک - احمد کا جھولا - ابا کی چھڑی - ام کا پھل -
 اجد کی چھتری - آبا کا جھومر - چوٹے کی ڈپٹی -

Revisional Exercise :—

دس تک گنو - آج کیا دن ہے ؟ بگلاس دے آؤ - لڑکی پانی لائی - کل عید ہے -
 یہ نیم کا پیڑ ہے - ریل چلتی ہے - بادل گر جتا ہے - بجلی چمکتی ہے - مور ناچتا ہے -
 موٹی آیا - طوطا بولتا ہے - شور نہ کیجئے - مبلل کا نمہ سنئے -
 ہد ہد اڑ گیا - استاد کا ادب کرو - خدا سے دعا کرو - یہ ایک
 مورت ہے - گیسنی خوب صورت ہے - وہ سورج نکلا - ریل آتی ہے -
 سانپ کا شاشہ ہو رہا ہے - دانت صاف کرو - مینہ خوب برسنا - حوض کا پانی
 صاف ہے - وہ انگور کی نیل ہے - یہ گلاب کا پودا ہے - شمع روشن
 کرو - پانی گرم ہے - کشتی بچو سے چلتی ہے - چٹو میں پانی لو - تجم سے
 بال کٹواؤ -

THE NUMERALS

۱ ۲ ۳ ۴ ۵ ۶ ۷ ۸ ۹ ۱۰

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

PART II

THE ARTICLE

“A”, “an”, and “the” are called the Articles. “A” and “an” are generally translated by “ek” (meaning one), while “the” is omitted in Urdu. Sometimes “the” is translated by Yeh == this and Woh == that, when great precision is required.

Nouns

MASCULINES

Man	Ādmī	آدمی	Paper	Kāghaz	کاغذ
House	Ghar	گھر	Knife	Chāqū	چاقو
Name	Nām	نام	Office	Daftar	دفتر
Water	Pānī	پانی	Servant	Naukar	نوکر
Box	Sandūq	صندوق	Verandah	Barāmda	برآمدہ

FEMININES

Women	Aurat	عورت	Tabl	Mēz	میز
Hat	Topī	ٹوپی	Book	Kitāb	کتاب
Shop	Dukān	دکان	Letter	Chitthī	چٹھی
Belt	Pētī	پٹی	Letter	<u>khat</u> *	خط
Knife	Chhurī	چھری	Stick	Lakrī	لکڑی
Chair	Kursī	کرسی	* <u>Khat</u> is masculine.		

Preposition

A Preposition is a word that governs a Noun or a Pronoun. The little words "on, to, from, in, of" etc./ are called the Prepositions in English, because they come before the Noun they govern, but their equivalents are called the Post-positions in Urdu because they come after the Noun they govern, thus:—

To	Ko	کو	From	Se	سے
On	Par	پر	In	Men	میں

Examples

To the servant	Servant to	Naukar ko	نوکرو کو
From the shop	Shop from	Dukan se	دکان سے
On the table	Table on	Mez par	میز پر
In the box	Box in	Sandūq men	صندوق میں

EXERCISE I(A)

(Translate into English)

Kitāb par. Ādmī sē. Pānī mēñ. Dukān ko. Chitthī mēñ. Topī par. Daftar ko. Sandūq sē. Aurat ko. Ghar mēñ. Kāghaz par. naukar sē. Pēti mēñ. Chhurī se.

EXERCISE 1(B)

(Translate into Urdu)

To the woman. In the house. On the paper. From the servant. On the water. In the letter. To the office. On the box. From the man. In the belt. To the shop.

Verbs

Is	Hai	ہے	Go	Jāo	جاؤ
Come	Āo	آؤ	Bring	Lāo	لاؤ
Wait	Thairo	ٹھہرو	Send	Bhējo	بھیجیو
Take away	Lējāo		Take to	Lējāo	لے جاؤ

It must be remembered that in Urdu the position of the Verb is at the extreme end of the sentence. The following examples should be read carefully, and the learner should try to notice and remember the arrangement of words in them.

Examples

1. Go to the office (Office, to go)— Daftar ko jāo
2. Come in the shop (Shop in, come) Dukan mēñ āo.
3. Wait in the house (House in, wait) — Ghar mēñ thairo.
4. The book is on the table (Book, table on, is) — Kitāb mēz par hai.
5. The letter is in the box (Letter, box in, is) — Chitthi sanduq men hai.
6. Bring the hat from the shop (Hat, shop from, bring) — Topī dukān sē lao.
7. Put the book in the box (Book, box in, put) — Kitāb sandūq mēñ rakho.
8. Take this letter to the office (This letter, office to, take away)— Yeh chitthī daftar ko lējāo.

EXERCISE 2(A)**(Translate into English)**

Daftār ko āo. Ghar mēñ thairo. Dukān ko jāo. Chitthī sandūq mēñ hai. Topī mēz par hai. Mēz daftar sē lāo. Woh kāghaz sandūq mēñ rakho. Yeh sandūq ghar mēñ rakho.

EXERCISE 2(B)**(Translate into Urdu)**

Come in the house. Go to the shop. Wait in the office. The hat is in the box. The letter is on the table. The table is in the shop. Bring the box to the shop. Put the paper in the book. Take (away) this book to the office. Send the hat to the house. Bring the stick from the house. Put the knife on the table. Wait on the verandah.

Interrogatives

Who	Kaun	کون	Whose	Kiskā	کس کا
Which	Kaunsā	کونسا	How far	Kitni dūr	کتنی دور
Why	Kīōñ	کیوں	What	Kīā	کیا
Where	Kahāñ	کہاں	When	Kab	کب

It will be noticed that in English sometimes an Interrogative is used before a Verb; as "Who is that man?" and sometimes it is used before a Noun; as, "Whose house is that?" The same idea must be observed in urdu Sentences.

Note :— Never start an Urdu sentence with an Interrogative.

The answer to an Interrogative sentence in Urdu must start with the same word as the question did as,

Question :— Mez par kia hai? Answer :— Mez per kitab hai

Question :— Kitab kahan hai? Answer :— Kitab Mez par hai.

EXAMPLES

1. Who is that man? (that man **who** is) — Woh ādmī kaun hai?
2. Whose house is that? (that **whose** house is) — Woh kiskā ghar hai.
3. What is on the table? (table on, **what** is) — Mēz par kīā hai?
4. Whose servant is in the house? (house in **whose** servant is) — Ghar mēñ kiskā naukār hai?
5. Where is the servant? (Servant, **where** is) — Naukar kahāñ hai?

EXERCISE 3(A)

(Translate into English)

Woh kaun hai? Yeh kiskā ghar hai? Daftar mēñ kaun hai? Topī kahāñ hai? Woh kiskā naukār hai? Yeh kīā kitāb hai? Pētī sandūq mēñ kīōñ hai? Woh kaunsā kāghaz hai? Woh kaun ādmī hai? Chitthī kahāñ hai? Woh kaunsā ghar hai? Daftar kahāñ hai?

EXERCISE 3(B)

(Translate into Urdu)

Whose paper is that? What is in the book? Where is the hat? What book is that? Who is in the shop. The servant is in the shop. Whose servant? Why is the man here? What is on the table? Which knife is that? Why is the woman in the office?

Possessive Pronouns

My	Mērā	میرا	Our	Hamārā	ہمارا
Your	Tumhārā	تمہارا	His or Her	Uskā (ooska)	اُسکا

Adverbs

Here	Yahāñ	یہاں	There	Wahāñ	وہاں
O'clock	Baje	بجے	And (Conj.)	Aur	اور
Yes	Jī Hāñ	جی ہاں	No	Jī Nahiñ	جی نہیں
Don't	Mat	مت	Now	Ab	اب

Observation

Possessive pronouns have the same position in Urdu as they have in English i.e., they must precede the Noun they govern.

EXAMPLES

- What is your name? (Your name, what, is) — Tumhārā nām kīā hai?
- My servant is in the house (My servant, house in, is) — Mērā naukar ghar mēñ hai).
- Where is his house? (His house, where, is) — Uskā ghar kahāñ hai?
- Your knife is on the table (Your knife, table on, is) — Tumhārā chāqū mēz par hai.

Note : — *The Adverb must be used just before the Verb: as,*

- Bring that table here (That table, **here** bring) — Woh mēz yahāñ lāo.
- Put this letter there (This letter, **there** put) — Yeh chitthī wāhāñ rakho.
- Come here at two o'clock (Two o'clock, **here** come) — Do bajē yāhāñ āo.
- The servant is not in the house (Servant, house in, not is) — Naukar ghar men nahiñ hai.

EXERCISE 4(A)**(Translate into English)**

Tumhārā nām kīā hai? Mērā nam Abdul hai. Uskā ghar kahāñ hai? Uskā ghar bāzār mēñ hai. Woh mēz yahāñ lāo. Mērī topī mēz par rakho. Woh ādmī ghar mēñ nahiñ hai. Daftar ko mat jāo. Pāñī mēz par nahiñ hai. Mera kāghaz daftar ko lējāo. Pāñī mēz par mat rakho. Hamārā naukār daftar mēñ hai.

EXERCISE 4(B)**(Translate into Urdu)**

Where is my servant? Your servant is in the house. Where is his box? His box is in the office. Go there at one o'clock. Bring my hat from the office. His servant is not in the office. Don't go to the house. Don't bring the box here. Send my box to the office. The hat is not on the table. Don't put the box on the table.

Pronouns

I	Maiñ	میں	He, She	Woh	وہ
We	Ham	ہم	Thou	Tū	تو
You	Tum	تم	They	Woh	وہ
Am	Hūñ	ہوں	Is	Hai	ہے
Are (thou)	Hai	ہے	Are (you)	Ho	ہو
Are	Haiñ	ہیں			
I am	Main hūñ	میں ہوں	He is, She is	Woh hai	وہ ہے
We are	Ham haiñ	ہم ہیں	Thou are	Tu hai	تو ہے
You are	Tum ho	تم ہو	They are	Woh haiñ	وہ ہیں

- (i) 'Tum' is used for 'you' singular and plural, just as in English. It is plural in form though it may be singular or plural in use. The real second person singular 'tu' is seldom used.
- (ii) 'Tum'. (you) is only used to inferiors. To equals or superiors always use 'āp' with the third person plural verb (i.e. the form used with 'woh they). Āpkā—your.

Note the use and position of the above in the following examples.

EXAMPLES

1. I am his servant (I, his servant, am) — Maiñ, uskā naukār, hūñ.
2. He is in the house (He, house in, is) — Woh, ghar mēñ, hai.
3. Who are you? (you, who, are) — Tum kaun ho?
— (Polite) Āp kaun haiñ.
4. We are in the office (We, office in, are) — Ham, daftar mēñ, haiñ.
5. You are in the shop (You, shop in, are) — Tum, dukān mēñ, ho, or, Āp dukān mēñ, haiñ.
6. They are not in the shop (They, shop in, not are) — Woh, dukān mēñ, nahiñ haiñ.
7. I am not your servant (I, your servant, not am) — Maiñ, tumhārā naukār, nahiñ hūñ.
(or) Maiñ āpkā naukār nahiñ hūñ.

EXERCISE 5(A)**(Translate into English)**

Tum kaun ho? Maiñ āpkā naukar hūñ. Tumhārā ghar kahāñ hai? Mērā ghar Delhi mēñ hai. Woh daftar mēñ hai. Ham dukān mēñ haiñ. Āpkā naukar ghar mēñ hai. Woh daftar mēñ nahiñ hai. Woh mērā naukar hai. Tum kahāñ ho? Maiñ ghar mēñ hūñ. Tum daftar mēñ nahiñ ho. Uskā ghar bāzār mēñ nahiñ hai.

Exercise 5(b)**(Translate into Urdu)**

Who is he? He is my servant. I am in the office. They are not men. Where are you? He is in the office. We are in the shop. I am a dhobi. Where is your house? He is not here. I am not his servant. They are not in the shop. He is not in my office. Which is your box.

Revisional Exercise 6(a)

1. Take this box to the shop and put it on the table.
2. Why is my servant not in the house?
3. What is your name, where is your house and why are you here?
4. Don't bring my box to the office now.
5. How far is your house from the shop?
6. The book is in the box and the box is in the house.
7. He is not here.

Revisional Exercise 6(b)

- ۱۔ دفتر کو آؤ۔ ۲۔ میرا خط میز پر رکھو۔ ۳۔ یہ صندوق گھر کو لے جاؤ۔
- ۴۔ وہ کون ہے؟ ۵۔ ٹوپی کہاں ہے؟ ۶۔ وہ کس کا نوکر ہے؟
- ۷۔ یہ کیا کتاب ہے؟ ۸۔ بیٹی صندوق میں کیوں ہے؟
- ۹۔ وہ کونسا کاغذ ہے؟ ۱۰۔ یہ تمہاری چٹھی نہیں ہے؟
- ۱۱۔ احمد کہاں ہے؟ ۱۲۔ پانی میز پر مت رکھو۔
- ۱۳۔ تمہارا نام کیا ہے؟ ۱۴۔ میرا نام عبدال ہے۔ ۱۵۔ بازار کو مت جاؤ۔
- ۱۶۔ وہ میز یہاں لاؤ۔ ۱۷۔ میری کتاب دفتر کو بھیجو۔
- ۱۸۔ یہ صندوق دفتر کو لے جاؤ اور میز پر رکھو۔ ۱۹۔ میرا نوکر گھر میں کیوں نہیں ہے؟
- ۲۰۔ تمہارا نام کیا ہے؟ تمہارا گھر کہاں ہے اور تم یہاں کیوں ہو؟
- ۲۱۔ میرا صندوق دفتر کو اب مت لاؤ۔ ۲۲۔ آپ کا گھر دفتر سے کتنی دور ہے؟
- ۲۳۔ میرا گھر دفتر سے پانچ میل دور ہے۔ ۲۴۔ کتاب صندوق میں ہے اور صندوق دکان میں ہے۔

PART III

THE NOUN

The name of a person, place or thing is called a Noun; as James, Bombay, chair, etc.

NOUNS

Masculines

Boy	Laḥkā	لڑکا	Son	Bētā	بیٹا
Horse	Ghoḥā	گھوڑا	Dog	Kuttā	کتا
Room	Kamra	کمرہ	Door	Darwāza	دروازہ
Cloth	Kapṛā	کپڑا	Egg	Andā	انڈا
Envelope	Lifāfa	لفافہ	Lock	Tālā	تالا
Hour, Clock	Ghanta	گھنٹہ	Bathroom	Ghusl Khāna	غسل خانہ
Brother	Bhāī	بھائی	Husband	Khāwind	خاوند

Feminines

Girl	Laḥkī	لڑکی	Daughter	Bēṭī	بیٹی
Mare	Ghoṛī	گھوڑی	Bitch	Kutyā	کُتیا
Window	Khiṛkī	کھڑکی	Key	Chābī	چابی
Watch	Ghaḥī	گھڑی	Carriage	Gāḥī	گاڑی
Turban	Pagḥī	پگڑی	Ink	Siāhī	سپاہی
Saddle	Zīn	زین	Inkpot	Dawāt	دوات
Sister	Bahen	بہن	Wife	Bīwī	بیوی

Gender

- The Urdu language has only two Genders, i.e., the Masculine Gender and the Feminine Gender, and no Neuter Gender.

Males are called Masculine and Females Feminine.

- (a) Nouns that end in “a”, with very few exceptions, are Masculines : as, Larkā—a boy; Kaprā—cloth.
- (b) Nouns that end in “i” are almost always Feminine: as, Larkī—a girl; Gārī—a carriage. Ādmī (man) or bhāī (brother) are masculines by meaning.

The Gender of inanimate Nouns that do not end in “a” or “i” must be learnt by practice.

Number

3. There are two Numbers, i.e., the Singular and the Plural. One thing is called Singular, and more than one, Plural. The rules forming the Plurals are quite simple.

The following are the four rules for forming the Nominative Plurals.

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| Masculine | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If a Masculine Noun ends in “a” change the “a” into “e”; as, Lark ā — one boy; Larkē—boys. 2. If a Masculine Noun does not end in “a” it remains unaltered; as Ghar— one house; Chār ghar—four houses. |
| Feminine | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If a Feminine Noun ends in “i” add “ āñ” as, Larkī—a girl; Larkīāñ—girls. 2. If a Feminine Noun does not end in “i” add “ ēñ”; as, Kitāb—a book; Kitābēñ—books. |

EXERCISE 7

Form the Nominative Plurals of

Masculine Nouns :—

Bētā, Ghōṛā, Daftar, Tālā, Chāqū, Naukar, Lifāfa, Bhāī, Kamra, Kuttā, Ghanta, Larkā, Andā, Nām, Darwāza, Sandūq, Barāmda, Ghar.

Feminine Nouns :—

Chābi, Pētī, Mēz, Gārī, Dawāt, Lakṛī, Dukān, Aurat, Chīṭṭhī, Topī, Zīn, Bīwī, Kitāb, Khīṛkī, Pagṛī, Gharī.

The Cases

4. The most important are the Nominative and the Objective cases.

- (a) A Noun is said to be in the Nominative Case, when it is the name of something talked about, and when it is not governed by any Preposition; as, "The soldier drills". Here the "soldier" is in the Nominative Case because he does something.
- (b) A Noun is said to be in the Objective Case, when something is done to it, or when it is governed by a Preposition or a Transitive Verb; as, "He sees the horse", "He was on the horse." In both sentences "horse" is in the Objective Case.
- (c) In English no alteration is made in the actual spelling of a Noun when it is Objective, but in Urdu alterations, in accordance with Rules given hereafter, are made in certain cases where the objective is governed by a Post-Position. All cases, except the Nominative Case, are called the Oblique Cases, which have different names according to the Post-Position following them.

Thus a Noun is said to be in the

Genitive	Case if	followed	by	“kā”— of
Dative	”	”	”	ko — to
Locative	”	”	”	par or mēñ—at
Ablative	”	”	”	sē—with
Agent	”	”	”	nē—by
Vocative	”	”	”	ai or o—O!

In the Accusative case the Noun is not governed by any Post-Position, because it is governed by a Transitive Verb; as, kill a dog—ēk kutta maro.

Note :— A Noun in the Accusative case has either the same form as a Nominative, as in English, or is expressed by “ko”, like the Dative.

Oblique Singular

(Singular Nouns followed by Post-Positions)

1. Masculine Singular Nouns ending in “a” change the “a” into “e” before a Post-Position for the sake of euphony; as,

On the horse, Ghoṛē par گھوڑے پر (not Ghoṛa par).

In the room, Kamrē mēñ کمرے میں (not Kamra mēñ).

2. Masculine Singular Nouns not ending in “a” do not change.
3. Feminine Singular Nouns never change.

OBLIQUE PLURALS

The Oblique Plurals have but one rule, which is that all Plural Nouns (of whatever Gender or ending) have the suffix "on" when followed by a Post-Position. If, however, a Masculine Singular Noun ends in "a" the "a" is dropped before "on" for the sake of euphony; as :—

Man	ādmī	—	To the men	ādmīon ko	آدمیوں کو
Table	mēz	—	On the tables	mēzon par	میزوں پر
House	ghar	—	In the houses	gharon mēñ	گھروں میں
Office	daftar	—	From the offices	daftaron sē	دفتروں سے
Dog	kuttā	—	To the dogs	kūtoñ ko	کوتوں کو
Cloth	kāpfā	—	On the clothes	kapñon par	کپڑوں پر

EXERCISE 8(A)

(On the Oblique Singular and Plural)

Translate into English:—

Sandūq mēñ	صندوق میں	Sandūqon mēñ	صندوقوں میں
Ghar mēñ	گھر میں	Gharon mēñ	گھروں میں
Laḳē ko	لڑکے کو	Laḳon ko	لڑکوں کو
Ghofē sē	گھوڑے سے	Ghofon sē	گھوڑوں سے
Lifāfē mēñ	لفافے میں	Lifāfon mēñ	لفافوں میں
Ghofī par	گھوڑی پر	Ghofion par	گھوڑیوں پر
Pēṭī mēñ	پیٹی میں	Pēṭion mēñ	پیٹیوں میں
Naukar ko	نوکرو کو	Naukaron ko	نوکروں کو

EXERCISE 8(B)**Translate into Urdu:—**

From the office	From the offices	In the window	In the windows
In the inkpot	In the inkpots	From the door	From the doors
To the mare	To the mares	On the horse	On the horses
To the dog	To the dogs	In the house	In the houses
In the box	In the boxes		

Revisional Exercise 9

Two Masculine Nouns are declined on page 30 one of them ending in “a” and the other not ending in “a”.

Two Feminine Nouns are declined on page 30, one ending in “i” and the other not ending in “i”.

Decline all the Nouns given under them according to the model.

MASCULINES

Singular		Plural	
Nominative	Oblique	Nominative	Oblique
گھوڑا	Ghoṛa	Ghoṛe	Ghoṛon ko
دفتر	Daftar	گھوڑے	گھوڑوں کو Daftaron ko
چاقو	Chaqu		دفتروں کو
نوکری	Naukar		
لٹافہ	Lifafa		
بھائی	Bhāi		
کمرہ	Kamra		
کٹتا	Kuttā		
گھنٹہ	Ghanta		
لڑکا	Larkā		
انڈا	Andā		
نام	Nām		
دروازہ	Darwāza		
صندوق	Sandūq		
برآمدہ	Barāmda		
گھر	Ghar		

Note : — Put a dash where a Noun undergoes no change.

FEMININES

Singular			Plural	
Nominative		Oblique	Nominative	Oblique
لڑکی	Laḡkī	Laḡkī ko لڑکی کو	Laḡkīāñ	Laḡkīoñ ko لڑکیوں کو
عورت	Aurat	—	Auratēñ عورتیں	Auratoñ ko عورتوں کو
میز	Mēz			
گاہڑی	Gāḡī			
دوات	Dawāt			
چھری	Chhurī			
دوکان	Dukān			
چٹھی	Chīṭṭhī			
ٹوپی	Ṭopī			
زین	Zīn			
بیوی	Bīwī			
کتاب	Kitāb			
کھڑکی	Khiṛkī			
ہنگڑی	Pagḡī			
بہن	Bahen			
گھڑی	Ghaḡī			

Note :— Put a dash where a Noun undergoes no change.

Past Auxiliary Verbs

Singular	Plural
Was (Masc.)—thā تھا	Were (Masc.) thē تھے
Was (Fem.)—thī تھی	Were (Fem.)—thīñ تھیں

EXAMPLES

- The boy was in the house (boy, house in, was) —
Laḥkā ghar mēñ thā. لڑکا گھر میں تھا
- The man was on the horse (man, horse on, was)—
Ādmī ghofē par thā. آدمی گھوڑے پر تھا
- The girl was in the room (girl, room in, was)—
Laḥkī kamrē mēñ thī لڑکی کمرے میں تھی
- The books were on the tables (books, tables on, were)—
Kitābēñ mēzoñ par thīñ. کتابیں میزوں پر تھیں
- The boys were in the offices (boys, offices in, were) —
Laḥkē daftarōñ mēñ thē. لڑکے دفاتروں میں تھے

Exercise 10(a)

- Laḥkā ghofē par thā.
- Laḥkē ghofōñ par thē.
- Kamrē mēñ ēk darwāza thā.
- Kamroñ mēñ chār darwāzē thē.
- Ghanṭa daftar mēñ thā.
- Ghanṭē daftarōñ mēñ thē.
- Laḥkī kamrē mēñ thī.
- Laḥkiāñ kamroñ mēñ thīñ.
- Aurat gāfi mēñ thī.
- Auratēñ gāfi mēñ thīñ.
- Kitāb sandūq mēñ thī.
- Kitābēñ sandūqōñ mēñ thīñ.
- Naukar barāmdē mēñ thā.
- Naukar barāmdōñ mēñ thē.
- Topī mēz par thī.
- Topiāñ mēzoñ par thīñ.
- Chābī tālē mēñ thī.
- Chābiāñ tāloñ mēñ thīñ.
- Andā dukān mēñ thā.
- Andē dukānon mēñ thē.
- Dawāt mēz par thī.
- Dawātēñ mēzon par thīñ.

EXERCISE 10(B)

1. The cloth was in the box. 2. The clothes were in the boxes. 3. The son was in the room. 4. The sons were in the rooms. 5. The letter was in the envelope. 6. The letters were in the envelopes. 7. The man was in the carriage. 8. The men were in the carriages. 9. The key was on the table. 10. The keys were on the tables. 11. The boy was on the horse. 12. The boys were on the horses. 13. The dog was on the verandah. 14. The dogs were on the verandahs. 15. The man was in the shop. 16. The men were in the shops. 17. The belt was in the box. 18. The belts were in the boxes. 19. The knife was on the table. 20. The knives were on the tables. 21. The woman was on the horse. 22. The women were on the horses. 23. The boy was on the horse and the girl was on the mare. 24. The boys were on the horses and the girls were on the mares.

PRONOUN

A Pronoun is a word used in place of a Noun, as I, we, you, he, they, she, it, etc.

Declensions of Pronouns

<u>1st Person</u>			
Singular			
Oblique	Nom. I	Main	میں
	My	Mera	میرا
	To me	Mujh ko	مجھ کو
	On me	Mujh par	مجھ پر
	In me	Mujh Mēñ	مجھ میں
	From me	Mujh Sē	مجھ سے

Plural		
We	Ham	ہم
Our	Hamārā	ہمارا
To us	Ham ko	ہم کو
On us	Ham par	ہم پر
In us	Ham mēñ	ہم میں
From us	Ham sē	ہم سے

2nd Person		
Singular		
Oblique	Nom. Thou	Tū تو
	Thy Tērā	تیرا
	To Thee	Tujh ko تجھ کو
	On "	" par تجھ پر
	In "	" mēñ تجھ میں
	From "	" sē تجھ سے
Plural		
You	Tum/Āp	تم / آپ
Your	Tumhārā/Āp kā	تمہارا / آپ کا
To you	Tum ko/Āp ko	تم کو / آپ کو
On "	" par/Āp par	تم پر / آپ پر
In "	" mēñ /Āp mēñ	تم میں / آپ میں
From "	" sē/Āp sē	تم سے / آپ سے

3rd Person						
Singular						
Oblique	Nom.	He	Woh	وہ	His	Us kā اُس کا
		To him	Us ko	اُس کو	On him	Us par اُس پر
		In him	Us mēñ	اُس میں	From him	Us sē اُس سے

Plural

They	Woh	وہ	Their	Un kā	اُن کا
To them	Un ko	اُن کو	On them	Un par	اُن پر
In them	Un mēñ	اُن میں	From them	Un sē	اُن سے

Note :— “Woh” means “He, she, it, that, they, and those.”

Accusative case

Singular			Plural		
Me	Mujhē	مجھے	Us	Hamēñ	ہمیں
Thee	Tujhē	تجھے	You	Tumhēñ	تمہیں
Him or her	Usē	اسے	Them	Unhēñ	انہیں

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Singular			Plural		
This	Yeh	یہ	These	Yeh	یہ
To this	Is ko	اس کو	Of these	In kā	ان کا
Of this	Is kā	اس کا	On these	In par	ان پر
From this	Is sē	اس سے	In these	In mēñ	ان میں

REMOTE

Singular			Plural		
That	Woh	وہ	Those	Woh	وہ
Of that	Us kā	اُس کا	Of those	Un kā	اُن کا
To that	Us ko	اُس کو	On those	Un par	اُن پر
From that	Us sē	اُس سے	In those	Un mēñ	اُن میں

Note :— The easiest way to remember the above is that before a Post-position, or before a Noun followed by a Post-position

Yeh	(this)	is changed	into	“is”	اس
Yeh	(these)	”	”	“in”	اِن
Woh	(that)	”	”	“us”	اُس
Woh	(those)	”	”	“un”	اُن

This horse, yeh ghoḥā; On this horse, is ghoḥē par
 These horses, yeh ghoḥē; On these horses, in ghoḥoñ par
 That horse, woh ghoḥā; on that horse, us ghoḥē par
 Those horses, woh ghoḥē; On those horses, un ghoḥoñ par

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB— “HONA” (TO BE)

PRESENT

Singular					
I am	Main hūñ	میں ہوں	Thou art	Tū hai	تو ہے
He or she is	Woh hai	وہ ہے			

Plural					
We are	Ham haiñ	ہم ہیں	You are	Tum ho	تم ہو
They are	Woh haiñ	وہ ہیں			
PAST					
Singular					
I was	Maiñ thā	میں تھا	Thou wast	Tū thā	تو تھا
He was	Woh thā	وہ تھا	She was	Woh thī	وہ تھی
Plural					
We were	Ham thē	ہم تھے	You were	Tum thē	تم تھے
They were	Woh thē	وہ تھے	They were	Woh thīñ	وہ تھیں
FUTURE					
Singular					
I shall be	Maiñ hoñgā	میں ہوں گا	Thou wilt be	Tū hogā	تو ہو گا
He will be	Woh hogā	وہ ہو گا	She will be	Woh hogī	وہ ہو گی
Plural					
We will be	Ham hoñgē	ہم ہوں گے	You will be	Tum hogē	تم ہوں گے
They will be	Woh hoñgē	وہ ہوں گے	They will be	Woh hoñgī	وہ ہوں گی

EXAMPLES

I am in the room.

Maiñ kamfē mēñ hūñ.

You are on the horse.

Tum ghoṛē par ho.

He was my son.

Woh mērā bētā thā.

They will be on the horses.

Woh ghoṛoñ par hoñgē.

EXERCISE 11(A)

1. Maiñ daftar mēñ thā. 2. Woh ghofī par thī. 3. Woh ghofē par thā. 4. Woh mērā bētā hai. 5. Āp kā naukar kamrē mēñ hai. 6. Tum daftar mēñ ho. 7. Woh ghul khānē mēñ hai. 8. Maiñ ghar mēñ hoñgā. 9. Woh dukān mēñ hoñge. 10. Ham gāfī mēñ thē. 11. Maiñ ghofē par hūñ. 12. Āp gāfī mēñ thē. 13. Maiñ uskā naukar hūñ.

EXERCISE 11(B)

1. I am your servant. 2. He is my brother. 3. We are in the office. 4. You are on the horse. 5. They are men. 6. I was in the room. 7. She was on the verandah. 8. They were on the horses. 9. The women were on the mares. 10. I shall be in the house. 11. The letters will be in the boxes. 12. The men will be in the shops. 13. The women will be in the rooms.

THE GENITIVE CASE

(or the Use of “kā, kē, or kī” - of)

In Urdu the order of words connected by “of” is the reverse of that used in English, i.e., the word which is used before “of” in English comes after “kā” in Urdu and vice versa; as,

The door of the house (will become)

House's door — ghar kā darwāza.

The key of the lock of the office (will become)

Office's lock's key—Daftar kē tālē kī chābī.

Note : — It follows that when “s” is used in English, the order of the words does not change. The place of “s” is taken by “kā”, “kē” or “kī” according to the Gender, Number and Case of the Noun that follows; as,

The man's house or	—	man's house, ādmī ka ghār
The house of the man		آدمی کا گھر
The woman's son or	—	woman's son, aurat kā bētā.
The son of the woman		عورت کا بیٹا

The following rules regarding the use of "kā, kē and kī" must be carefully learnt and practised.

1. "Kā" is used before a Masculine Singular Noun, when the latter is not followed by a Post-position; as

The sister's son	Bahen kā bētā	بہن کا بیٹا
The door of the house	Ghar kā darwāza	گھر کا دروازہ

2. "Kē" is used before Masculine Singular Noun, when the latter is followed by a Post-position; as,

To the sister's son	Bahen kē bētē ko	بہن کے بیٹے کو
In the door of the house	Ghar kē darwāzē mēñ	گھر کے دروازے میں

3. "Kē" is also used before all Masculine Plural Nouns, whether followed by a Post-position or not; as,

In the door of the house	Ghar kē darwāzē mēñ
The sister's sons	Bahen kē bētē
To the sister's sons	Bahen kē bētoñ ko
The doors of the house	Ghar kē darwāzē
In the doors of the house	Ghar kē darwāzoñ mēñ

4. "Kī" is used before all Feminine Nouns whether Singular or Plural, or whether followed by a Post-Position or not; as,

The servant's daughter	Naukar kī bētī	نوکری بیٹی
To the servant's daughter	Naukar kī bētī ko	نوکری بیٹی کو
The servant's daughters	Naukar kī bētīāñ	نوکری بیٹیاں
To the servant's daughters	Naukar kī bētīoñ ko	نوکری بیٹیوں کو

It must be remembered that "kā", being a Post-position inflects the preceding Noun, while itself agrees with the Noun which it precedes; as,

The boy's mare	Laḥkē kī ghoḥī	لڑکے کی گھوڑی
The boys' mares	Laḥkoñ ki ghoḥīāñ	لڑکوں کی گھوڑیاں

In the above sentences "kā" has changed "la ḥkā" into "la ḥkē and laḥkoñ" respectively while it has itself become "kī" to agree with the following Feminine Noun "ghoḥī".

EXAMPLES

1. The woman's son is in the office. Aurat kā bētā daftar mēñ hai.
2. The servant's son was on the horse. Naukar kā bētā ghoḥē par thā.
3. The boy's clothes are in the box. Laḥkē kē kaprē sandūq mēñ haiñ.
4. The dog was in the boy's room. Kuttā laḥkē kē kamrē mēñ thā.
5. The girls were on the women's horses. Laḥkīāñ auratoñ kē ghoḥoñ par thiñ.
6. The matting of the room was in the tailor's shop. Kamrē kī chatāī darzī kī dukān mēñ thi.

7. The boys' father was on the horse. Laḥkoñ kā bāp ghoṛē par thā
 8. The mother of the girls is in the room. Larkioñ kī māñ kamrē mēñ hai.
 9. The key of the lock of the office is on the table. Daftar kē tālē kī chābī mēz par hai.
 10. Your servant's turban was in the box. Āp kē naukar kī pagṛī sandūq mēñ thī.

EXERCISE 12(A)

(For new words see over page)

1. Darzī kā bēṭā. 2. Naukar kē kapṛē. 3. Dost kī bēṭī. 4. Bēṭī kī dost. 5. Ghorē kī qīmat. 6. Palaṅg kī chādar sandūq mēñ hai. 7. Laḥkē kī kitābēñ kamrē kē konē mēñ haiñ. 8. Naukar kē kapṛē dhobī kē ghar mēñ haiñ. 9. Mēz kē kapṛē kī qīmat jēb mēñ hai. 10. Is ādmī kī dukān Sadar Bāzār mēñ hai. 11. Dost kī bēṭiāñ ghoṛioñ par thīñ. 12. Palaṅg ghar kī chhat par hai. 13. Woh chīzēñ kamrē kē konē mēñ haiñ. 14. Bādshāh kī taswīr khazānē kē kamrē kī dīwār par hai. 15. Is ādmī kā dost tār ghar mēñ hai. 16. Daftar kē tāloñ kī chābiāñ Alī Sāheb kē kamrē ko lējāo. 17. Ahmed sāheb kē naukar kē bēṭē kē sandūq kī chābī sāis kī jēb mēñ thī.

WORDS

Masculines					
Order	Hukm	حکم	Butcher	Qasāī	قصابی
Tailor	Darzī	درزی	Washerman	Dhobī	دھوبی
Tiger	Shēr	شیر	King	Bādshāh	بادشاہ
Beast	Jānwar	جانور	Bed	Palaṅg	پلنگ
Bedding	Bistar	بستر	Corner	Kona	کونہ
Telegraph Office	Tār ghar	تار گھر	Friend	Dost	دوست
Post Office	Dāk <u>khānā</u>	ڈاکخانہ	Treasury	<u>Khazāna</u>	خزانہ
Pen	Qalam	قلم	Father	Bāp	باپ

Feminines					
Pocket	Jēb	جیب	Gun	Bandūq	بندوق
Barrel (gun)	Nālī	نالی	Roof	Chhat	چھت
Sheet	Chādar	چادر	Thing	Chīz	چیز
Washer woman	Dhoban	دھوبن	Wall	Dīwār	دیوار
Picture	Taswīr	تصویر	Price	Qīmat	قیمت
Sunshine	Dhūp	دھوپ	Moonlight	Chāndnī	چاندنی
Cantonment	Chhāonī	چھاوٹی	Court (Justice)	Adālat	عدالت
Bread	Roṭī	روٹی	Mother	Māñ	ماں

1. The man's dog. 2. The son's room. 3. The barrel of the gun. 4. I was on the boy's horse. 5. The husband's clothes were in the box. 6. The washerman's house is in the Sadar Bazar. 7. The woman's book was on the table. 8. This is the Director's order. 9. The horse of the carriage. 10. The boy's carriage. 11. The key of the box was in the pocket. 12. The husbands of the women were on the horses. 13. The daughters of the servants are in the room. 14. The butcher's servant was in the tailor's shop. 15. The tiger is the king of the beasts of the jungle. 16. The sheet of the bed is in the washerman's house.

THE ADJECTIVES

An Adjective is a word joined to a Noun to show its quality (as a strong man); size (as, a large book); colour (as, a red coat) or to describe it in any way.

Adjectives

Read the following words of opposite meaning across the page.

True	Sach-chā	سچا	False (liar)	Jhutā	جھوٹا
Hot	Garm	گرم	Cold	Thandā	ٹھنڈا
Dry	Sūkhā	سُکھا	Wet	Gilā	گیلا
Clean, clear	Sāf	صاف	Dirty	Mailā	مِلا
Great, large	Bāfā	بڑا	Small, little	Chhoṭā	چھوٹا
High, Big	Uñchā	اُونچا	Low	Nichā	نیچا
Long, tall	Lambā	لمبا	Short	Chhoṭā	چھوٹا
Wide	Chauṛā	چوڑا	Narrow	Taṅg	تنگ
Deep	Gahrā	گہرا	Shallow	Uthlā	اُتھلا
All	Sab	سب	Few	Chand	چند
Dark	Andhērā	اندھیرا	Bright	Raushan	روشن
Young (youthful)	Jawān	جوان	Old, (animate)	Buddhā	بُڈھا
New	Nayā	نیا	Old (inanimate)	Purānā	پُرانا
Much	Bahut	بہت	A little (quantity)	Thoṛā	تھوڑا
Good	Ach- <u>chhā</u>	اچھا	Bad	<u>Kharāb</u> or Burā	خراب بُرا

The adjectives, as in English, are used immediately before their Nouns. Adjectives that do not end in "a" undergo no change, but those that end in "a" change the "a" into "e" or "i", as the case may be, for Gender, Number and Case.

1. If a Masculine Singular Noun is not followed by a Post-position, the final "a" of the Adjectives does not change; as, a large dog— *ĕk baġā kuttā*.
2. If a Masculine Singular Noun is followed by a Post-position and before all Masculine Plural Nouns (whether followed by a Post-position or not) the final "a" of the Adjective is changed into "e"; as,

To the large dog.	Baġē kuttē ko.	بڑے کتے کو
The large dogs.	Baġē kuttē.	بڑے کتے
To the large dogs.	Baġē kuttoñ ko.	بڑے کتوں کو

3. The final "a" of the Adjective is changed into "i" before all Feminine Nouns, whether Singular or Plural or whether followed by a Post-Position or not; as,

A large mare.	Baġi ghoġi.	بڑی گھوڑی
On the large mare.	Baġi ghoġi par.	بڑی گھوڑی پر
On the large mares.	Baġi ghoġioñ par.	بڑی گھوڑیوں پر

Observation : — Adjectives never have the endings "āñ", "eñ" and "oñ". For instance we cannot say — Baġiāñ ghoġiāñ; Baġioñ ghoġioñ par (or) Baġeñ ghoġeñ par.

Note : The possessive Pronouns, such as "mērā", "hamārā", "tumhārā", "āpkā", "uskā", "unkā", etc., follow the same rules as Adjectives; as,

EXAMPLES

1. He is a good boy. Woh ach-*chhā* laḥkā hai.
2. Your dog was in my room. Tumhārā kutta mērē kamrē mēñ thā.
3. The large envelopes were on the small table. Baḥē lifāḥē chhoṭī mēz par thē.
4. His servants were in the low rooms. Uskē naukar nīchē kamroñ mēñ thē.
5. My daughter was on the good mare. Mērī bēṭī ach-*chhī* ghoṭī par thī.
6. His sons were in the small carriages. Uskē bēṭē chhoṭī garioñ mēñ thē.

EXERCISE 13(A)

1. Chhoṭā laḥkā baḥē kamrē mēñ thā. 2. Ach-*chhē* lifāḥē chhoṭī kitāb mēñ haiñ. 3. Tumhārī pagṛī bahut mailī hai. 4. Yeh pēṭī bahut lambī nahīñ hai. 5. Barī mēzēñ hamāḥē kamroñ mēñ haiñ. 6. Chhoṭī dawāt mēñ siāhī nahīñ hai. 7. Ach-*chhē* laḥkē kī māñ baḥē ghoḥē par hai. 8. Mērī naī bandūq kī nālī sāf nahīñ hai. 9. Naē sandūqoñ kī chābīāñ purānē kot (coat) kī jēb mēñ haiñ. 10. Uñchē palañg kī chādarēñ bahut mailī haiñ. 11. Is ādmī kī bīwī bāhut bīmār hai. 12. Is aurat kē bēṭē bāhut ach-*chhē* laḥkē haiñ. 13. Ach-*chhē* kapṛē baḥē sandūqoñ mēñ haiñ.

EXERCISE 13(B)

1. The good boy is in the large room. 2. The wet clothes are on the large table. 3. My new locks were in the large boxes. 4. Your new watch was in the low carriage. 5. His keys were in my pocket. 6. The little girls were on the good mares. 7. My brother's old servant is in your room. 8. The keys

of your office are in my son's pocket. 9. The old boxes are in the dirty houses. 10. My brother's servant is a good man. 11. The locks of your boxes are very old. 12. My servant's turbans are dirty. 13. A brother of my wife is a great liar. 14. Your new books were in the big boxes.

Adjectives					
Rich	Amīr	امیر	Poor	Gharīb	غریب
Easy	Āsān	آسان	Difficult	Mushkil	مشکل
Well	Tan-durust	تندرست	Ill	Bīmār	بیمار
Wise	Aqlmand	عقل مند	Foolish	Bēwaqūf	بیوقوف
Hard	Sakht	سخت	Soft	Narm	نرم
Honest	īmāndār	ایماندار	Dishonest	Bē-īmān	بے ایمان
Strong	Mazbūt	مضبوط	Weak	Kamzor	کمزور
Swift	Tēz	تیز	Cheap	Sastā	سستا
Sharp	Tēz	تیز	Blunt	Kund	کُند
Active	Chālāk	چالاک	Lazy	Sust	سست
Beautiful	Khūbsūrat	خوبصورت	Ugly	Bad-sūrat	بدصورت
Slow	Dhīmā or halkā	ہلکا	Expensive	Maḥḡā	مہنگا

The Degree of Comparison

There are three degrees of Adjectives in English; viz.,

The Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Large	Larger	Largest
Good	Better	Best
Strong	Stronger	Strongest
Bad	Worse	Worst
Beautiful	More beautiful	Most beautiful.

The Adjectives in Urdu have no Degrees of comparison corresponding to the above.

In Urdu the comparison between the two things is expressed by placing the Post-position “sē” (which here means “compared with “or” than”) after the Noun with which the comparison is made while the Adjective is made to agree with the Noun which is compared; as,

1. A horse is larger than a dog.
(A horse, dog than, large is)—
Ghoḥā kuttē sē baḥā haī.
2. The mare is dirtier than the dog.
(Mare, dog than, dirty is)—
Ghoḥī kuttē sē mailī haī.
3. The horses are higher than the carriages.
(Horses, carriages than, high are)—
Ghoḥē gāḥiōḥ sē ūṇchē haīḥ.
4. Your horse is cheaper than my mare.
(Your horse, my mare than, cheap is)—
Tumhārā ghoḥā mērī ghoḥī sē saṣṭā hai.
(or) Āpkā ghoḥā mērī ghoḥī sē saṣṭā hai.
5. The matting is longer than the room.
(Matting, room than, longer is)—
Chaṭāī kamrē sē lambī haī.
6. The paper of the book is better than that of the newspaper.
(Book's paper, newspaper's paper than, good is)—
Kitāb kā kāḡhaz akhbār kē kāḡhāz sē ach-chhā naī.

Superlative Degree

The superlative degree is expressed by using "sab se" (than all) before an ordinary Adjective; as,

Good	Ach- <u>chhā</u>	—	Best	Sab sē ach- <u>chhā</u>	سب سے اچھا
Bad	<u>Kharāb</u>	—	Worst	Sab sē <u>kharāb</u>	سب سے خراب
Large	Baḥā	—	Largest	Sab sē baḥā	سب سے بڑا
Small	Chhoṭā	—	Smallest	Sab sē chhoṭā	سب سے چھوٹا
Weak	Kamzor	—	Weakest	Sab sē kamzor.	سب سے کمزور

EXAMPLES

1. He was the best boy. (He, all than good, boy was)—
Woh, sab sē ach-chhā, laḥkā thā.
2. She is the wisest girl. (She, all than wise, girl is)—
Woh, sab sē aqlmand, laḥkī hāi.
3. These are the cheapest locks. (These, all than cheap, locks are)—
Yeh, sab sē sastē, tālē hāiñ.
4. This is the longest belt. Yeh, sab sē lambī, pēṭī hāi.
5. That was the most beautiful watch. Woh, sab sē khūbsūrat ghaḥī thī.

EXERCISE 14(A)

1. Chhoṭī mēz baḥī mēz sē maḥḡī hāi.
2. Hamārā naukār tumhārē bētē sē sust hai.
3. Is ādmī kā ghoṭā sab sē ach-chhā hāi.
4. Mahmūd sāheb kā daftār Asghar sāheb kē daftār sā baḥā hāi.
5. Yeh baḥā laḥkā chhoṭī laḥkī sē sust hai.
6. Darzī kī dukān qasāī kē ghar sē baḥī hāi.
7. Yeh bewaqūf ādmī tumhārē bāp sē aqlmand hai.
8. Yeh sab sē mushkil kitāb hai.
9. Tum gharīb ādmī ho; magar (but) mujh sē amīr ho.
10. Woh baḥā ghanṭa is chhoṭī ghaḥī sē sastā

hai. 11. Woh mazbūt ādmī sab sē sust hai. 12. Sab sē lambī lakḥī mērē kamrē kē konē mēñ hai. 13. In kitāboñ mēñ sab sē ach-*chhī* kitāb kaunsi hai? 14. Mērā nayā naukar tumhārē purānē naukar sē imāndār aur aqlmand hai.

WORDS

Masculines					
Village	Gāoñ	گاؤں	Way	Rāsta	راستہ
City	Shahr	شہر	Younger (<i>adj.</i>)	Chhoṭā	چھوٹا
Elder (<i>adj.</i>)	Baḥā	بڑا			
Feminines					
Road	Saḥak	سڑک	Chain	Zanjīr	زنجیر
Rope	Rassī	رسی	Expensive	Mañhgā	مہنگا
Footpath	Pagḍandī	پگڈنڈی			

EXERCISE 14(B)

1. The Post Office is larger than the Telegraph Office. 2. The watch is smaller than the clock. 3. The envelopes are wider than the papers. 4. This cloth is wider than the small table. 5. A chain will be stronger than a rope. 6. The horses are higher than the carriages. 7. My room is cooler than your office. 8. Your sons are dirtier than my dog. 9. The husband of the woman was taller than your brother. 10. Your daughter is older than his sister. 11. The chairs are older than the tables. 12. This is the largest box in my room. 13. This foolish man is the wisest man in this village. 14. Your shop is most expensive.

The Interrogative and Relative Pronouns etc.

1. When asking a question, if there is no word (such as “why”, “what”, etc.) which shows that the sentence is interrogative, either use the word “kiā” (what) at the beginning or simply raise the voice at the end.

Is that your horse ?

Kiā woh tumahārā ghōfā hai?

کیا وہ تمہارا گھوڑا ہے ؟

Is my book on the table ?

Mērī kitāb mēz par hai ?

میری کتاب میز پر ہے ۔

The Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions, as, who is that man? Which is your book?

3. The Relative Pronouns are used in connecting two sentences or ideas, as, this is the man who was in my room. The book which is on my table is not yours.

In English the same words are used for Interrogatives and Relatives, as is seen from the examples in the above sub-clauses (2) and (3), but in Urdu they have two different words, the uses of which are explained in the following rules.

4. When using the words, “who”, “when”, “what”, etc., use one of the Interrogative (question) Form if you expect an answer, their respective Relative Forms given against them in the following list.

Note :— The Relatives are formed by changing the initial “K” of the Interrogatives into “J” as will be seen in the following list.

Interrogatives			Relatives	
Who	Kaun	کون	Jo (Exception)	جو
Whose	Kis kā	کس کا	Jis kā	جس کا
To whom	Kis ko	کس کو	Jis ko	جس کو
Which	Kaunsā	کونسا	Jo (exception)	جو
What	Kīā	کیا	Jo (exception)	جو
Where	Kahāñ	کہاں	Jahāñ	جہاں
When	Kab	کب	Jab	جب
What sort of	Kaisā	کیسا	Jaisā	جیسا
How (in what manner)	Kaisē	کیسی	Jaisē	جیسی
How much	Kitnā, Kitnī	کتنّا، کتنی	Jitnā, Jitnī	جتنا، جتنی
How many	Kitnā, Kitnī	”	Jitnā, Jitnī	”
How far	Kitnī dūr	کتنی دُور	Jitnī dur	جتنی دُور
How long (time)	Kitnī dēr	کتنی دیر	Jitnī dēr	جتنی دیر
Why	Kīōñ	کیوں	—	—

Note :— The rules for the uses of Interrogatives are given on page 21.

EXAMPLES

- Who is that man? Woh ādmī kaun hai?
- Where is his house? Uskā ghar kahāñ hai?
- What is the name of your father? Tūmhārē bāp kā nām kiā hai?
- Where is the key of my small box? Mērē chhoṭē sandūq kī chābī kahāñ hai?

5. How many men were in the carriage? Gāfī mēñ kitnē ādmī thē?
6. This is the book which was on my table. Yeh woh kitāb hai, jo mērī mēz par thī.
7. I was at Delhi when you were at Lahore. Maiñ Delhi mēñ thā, jab tum Lahore mēñ thē.

EXERCISE 15(A)

1. Baḡ kamrē mēñ kaun hai? 2. Tumhārñ kamrē mēñ kiskā bēṭā hai? 3. Hamārī ṭopī kaunsē sandūq mēñ hai? 4. Yeh chhoṭī kitāb kaisī hai? 5. Chhoṭē sandūq mēñ kitnē andē haiñ? 6. Tumhārē bēṭē kē naukar kē ghar dāk khānē sē kitnī dūr hai? 7. Is kamrē mēñ kitnī kursīāñ haiñ? 8. Chhāonī ko kaunsā rāsta jata hai? 9. In kitāboñ mēñ kaunsī kitāb sab sē ach-chhī hai? 10. Chhoṭī kitāb, jo mērī mēz par hai, bahut mushkil hai. 11. Woh ādmī, jiskā ghoṛā darakht kē nīchē hai, chor hai. 12. Jab woh ādmī aur aurat bāzār mēñ thē, maiñ uskī dukān mēñ thā. 13. yeh kaunsē tālē kī chābī hai?

EXERCISE 15(B)

1. What is the name of your new servant? 2. Who is on my horse? 3. Where is that boy's house? 4. What are his sons' names? 5. Whose son are you? 6. How are you? 7. Which is the coolest room? 8. On which horse was your daughter? 9. When was my dog in your room? 10. What is the price of this watch? 11. Why were you not in the office? 12. What sort of carriages are those? 13. How much ink was in the inkpot? 14. How far is the Post Office from the Telegraph Office? 15. The man, who was in your room is my brother. 16. I was in the office when you were in the carriage. 17. This is the man whose son was your servant. 18. Where were you when I was in the room? 19. Is this your hat or mine?

Substantives used as Post-positions

On account of	kē sabab	کے سبب
Under, below	kē nīchē	کے نیچے
Behind	kē pīchhē	کے پیچھے
For	kē wāstē or kē līē	کے واسطے / کے لیے
Without	kē baghair	کے بغیر
With	kē sāth	کے ساتھ
In the middle of	kē bīch mēñ	کے بیچ میں
Between	kē darmiān	کے درمیان
Instead of	kē badlē	کے بدلے
Beyond	kē parē	کے پرے
According to	kē muāfiq	کے موافق
Round	kē gird	کے گرد
Round about	kē ās pās	کے آس پاس
In front of	kē sāmne	کے سامنے
Before (ahead)	kē āgē	کے آگے
Before (in time)	sē pahlē	سے پہلے
After (in time)	kē bād	کے بعد
Inside	kē andar	کے اندر
Outside	kē bāhar	کے باہر
Against	kē <u>khilāf</u>	کے خلاف
Across	kē pār	کے پار
Near	kē qarīb, or	کے قریب
	kē nazdik, or	کے نزدیک
	kē pās	کے پاس

The following are connected with the preceding Noun by means of “kī” —

Towards	kī taraf	کی طرف	Like	kī tarah	کی طرح
For the sake of	kī <u>khātir</u>	کی خاطر	About	kī bābat	کی بابت
			(concerning)		

The above Substantives in Urdu are used in place of Post-positions. Such substantives are used after the Nouns which they govern, and are connected with them by the inflected “Kē” or “Kī” — “of” (according to whether they are Masculine or Feminine.)

Note :— A similar construction is found in English. Thus “Kē nazdīk” might be translated by “in the neighbourhood of” and “Kī pīchhē” by “in the rear of”.

EXAMPLES

Near the village (in the vicinity of the village)

Gāoñ kē nazdīk

گاؤں کے نزدیک

Behind the house (In the rear of the house)

Ghar kē pīchhē

گھر کے پیچھے

With the horse (In company of the horse)

Ghoṛē kē sāth

گھوڑے کے ساتھ

Towards the room (In the direction of the room)

Kamrē kī taraf

کمرے کی طرف

Concerning or (about) the servant

Naukar kī babat

نوکری کی بابت

Observation. — Since “men” or some other Post-position is understood after such words as “nazdīk, pīchhē, sath” etc., the “kā” before them is used in the inflected form.

Note : — When a Pronoun is governed by such Substantives, the “**kē**” or “**kī**” is omitted and the Possessive Form of the Pronoun is used; as,

Near me (in my vicinity) — Mere qarīb (not “mujh Kē qarīb” or “Mērē Kē qarīb”).

With you (in your company)— Tumhārē sāth (not “tum kē sāth” or “tumhārē kē sāth”).

Towards us (In our direction — Hamārī taraf (not Ham kī taraf or Hamari kī taraf”).

With him (In his company) — Uskē sāth (not “usko kē sāth”).

EXAMPLES

1. The man was on the horse. Ādmī ghoṛē par thā.
2. My dog was under the table. Mērā kuttā mēz kē nīchē thā.
3. He was here without my order. Woh yahāñ mērē hukm kē baghair thā.
4. The boy's house is outside the city. Laṛkē kā ghar shahr kē bāhar hai.
5. There is a beautiful chain with the watch. Ghaṛī kē sāth ēk khūbsūrat zanjīr hai.
6. There were five men in my room. Mērē kamrē kē andar pāñch ādmī thē.
7. The guns were behind the boxes. Bandūqēñ sandūqōñ kē pīchhē thīñ.
8. The horses were for the boys, and the mares for the girls. Ghoṛē laṛkōñ kē wāstē thē aur ghoṛīāñ laṛkīōñ kē wāstē thīñ.
9. My son will be with me. Mērā bēṭā mērē sāth hogā.
10. This beautiful watch is for you. Yeh khūbsūrat ghaṛī tumhārē wāstē hai.
11. There was a high wall in front of them. Unkē sāmnē ēk ūñchī dīwār thī.
12. There is a large garden round my brother's house. Mērē bhāī kē ghar kē gird ēk baḡā bāgh hai.

EXERCISE 16(A)

1. Mērī dukān tār ghar kē nazdīk hai. 2. Mērā nām tumhārē nām kē nīchē hai. 3. Rassī zanjīr kē nīchē thī. 4. Tumhārī lakṛī baḥē sandūq kē pīchhē hai. 5. Kīā yeh sust naukar mērē dost kē wāstē hai. 6. Laḥkē īskūl mēñ kitāboñ kē baḡhair thē 7. Darzī kē sāth uskā naukar thā. 8. Tumhārē ghar kē sāmnē kitnē ādmī thē. 9. Khazānē kē gird bahut ādmī thē. 10. Ghoṛē kē sāth ēk purānī zīn hai. 11. Do chor gāṛī kē sāmnē aur do chor gāṛī kē pīchhē thē. 12. Is gāoñ kē ās pās shikār nahīñ hai. 13. Darzī dukān kē bāhar thā aur uskā naukar dukān kē andar thā. 14. Us ādmī kī bētī dīwār kī taraf thī.

Masculines					
Snake	Sāṅp	سانپ	Enemy	Dushman	دشمن
Knowledge	Ilm	علم	Thief	Chor	چور
Bungalow	Baṅgla	بنگلہ	Soldier	Sipāhī	سپاہی
River	Daryā	دریا	Tree	Pēḥ or darakht	پہرہ درخت
Feminines					
Wealth	Daulat	دولت	Neglect	Ghaḥflat	غفلت
Opinion	Rāē	رائے	Land	Zamīn	زمین
Help	Madad	مدد	Punishment	Sazā	سزا
Mess	Mess	میس	Wine	Sharāb	شراب
Cow	Gāē	گائے	Train	Rēlgāṛī	ریل گاڑی

EXERCISE 16(B)

1. My house is near the Post Office. 2. Here is a large snake behind the box. 3. My brother's horse was under the tree. 4. What is wealth without knowledge. 5. Is there any letter for me? 6. This is on account of your neglect. 7. Whose servant was with you? 8. The treasury is beyond the hospital. 9. The carriage was in front of my shop. 10. The soldiers were outside the village. 11. It is against the Major's order. 12. The thieves were

inside the room. 13. The mess is beyond the Post Office. 14. Who was with the Adjutant? 15. The mares were under the large trees. 16. My bungalow is near the Telegraph Office. 17. The servants were with the carriages.

Words

An hour	Ghanṭā	گھنٹہ	Day	Din or roz	دن / روز
Week	Hafta	ہفتہ	Fortnight	Do Haftē	دو ہفتے
Month	Mahīna	ماہینہ	Year	Sāl or baras	سال / برس
Night	Rāt	رات	To-day	Āj	آج
To-night	Āj rāt ko	آج رات کو	Morning	Subah	صبح
Evening	Shām	شام	Noon	Do pahar	دو پہر
Afternoon	Tisrē pahar	تیسرے پہر	At sun-rise	Din niklē	دن نکلے
At sun-set	Din chhupē	دن چھپے	At midnight	Ādhī rāt ko	آدھی رات کو
Every	Har	ہر	Once	Ēk dafa	ایک دفعہ
Twice	Do dafa	دو دفعہ	This morning	Āj subah ko	آج صبح کو
This evening	Āj sham ko	آج شام کو	Last week	Pichhlē haftē	پچھلے ہفتے
Next week	Aglē haftē	اگلے ہفتے	Early	Sawērē	سویرے
Yesterday	Kal	کل	Tomorrow	Kal	کل
Any	Koī	کوئی	Several	Kaī	کئی
No-one	Koī nahīn	کوئی نہیں			
Tomorrow night	Last night		Kal Rāt Ko		کل رات کو
Day before	Parsoñ	پڑسوں	Day after	Parson	پڑسون
Yesterday			Tomorrow		

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 17(A)

(On Exercises from 12 to 16)

1. What is the price of that land which is in front of your bungalow?

2. Do not cross the river without a gun this morning. 3. He was here with a friend before 8 o'clock last night. 4. A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend. 5. This old wine is good for that old man. 6. Yesterday was the coldest day of this month. 7. The little boy who is under the tree is the eldest son of my friend. 8. Whom is this letter for? 9. What is your opinion about it to-day? 10. This is the largest village between the two cities. 11. The boys and girls, who are sons and daughters today, will be fathers and mothers tomorrow.

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 17(B)

Read, write and translate into English.

۱۔ یہ سب سے اچھا آدمی ہے۔ ۲۔ تمہارا گھر میرے گھر سے بڑا ہے۔ ۳۔ اس آدمی کا دوست تار گھر میں ہے۔ ۴۔ دفتر کے تالوں کی چابیاں علی صاحب کے کمرے کو لے جاؤ۔ ۵۔ احمد صاحب کے نوکر کے بیٹے کے صندوق کی چابی ڈرائیور کے جیب میں تھی۔ ۶۔ اس آدمی کی بیوی بہت بیمار ہے۔ ۷۔ اس عورت کے بیٹے بہت اچھے لڑکے ہیں۔ ۸۔ اچھے کپڑے بڑے صندوق میں ہیں۔ ۹۔ ان کتابوں میں سب سے اچھی کتاب کون سی ہے۔ ۱۰۔ میرا نیا نوکر تمہارے پرانے نوکر سے ایسا نادر اور عقلمند ہے۔ ۱۱۔ وہ آدمی جس کی موٹر کار درخت کے نیچے کھڑی ہے بہت اچھا ہے۔ ۱۲۔ جب وہ آدمی اور عورت بازار میں تھے میں اس دوکان میں تھا۔ ۱۳۔ درزی دوکان کے اندر تھا اور اس کا نوکر دکان کے باہر تھا۔ ۱۴۔ ان عورتوں کے خاوند کلب میں تھے اور ان کی بیٹیاں اسکولوں میں تھیں۔

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 17(C)

Read, write and translate into English.

- ۱۔ وہ زمین جو تمہارے بنگلے کے سامنے ہے اُس کی قیمت کیا ہے ؟
- ۲۔ آج شام کو لکڑی کے بغیر جنگل کے پار مت جاؤ۔ ۳۔ وہ ایک دوست کے ساتھ آج صبح یہاں تھا۔ ۴۔ اُس بوڑھے آدمی کے لیے روٹی لاؤ۔ ۵۔ کل اس مہینے کا سب سے گرم دن تھا۔ ۶۔ وہ لڑکا جو باغ میں ہے میرے دوست کا سب سے بڑا بیٹا ہے۔ ۷۔ یہ خط کس کے واسطے ہے ؟ ۸۔ اس کی بابت آپ کی رائے کیا ہے ؟ ۹۔ کراچی پاکستان کا سب سے بڑا شہر ہے۔ ڈھاکہ ہمارا سب سے زیادہ خوبصورت شہر ہے۔ ۱۰۔ وہ لڑکے اور لڑکیاں جو آج بیٹے اور بیٹیاں ہیں کل باپ اور ماں ہوں گے۔

THE ADVERBS

The Adverbs are of several kinds, most of which are given below under different headings.

Now	Ab	اب	Always	Hamēsha	ہمیشہ
Just now	Abhī	ابھی	Quickly	Jaldī sē	جلدی سے
Yet	Abhī tak	ابھی تک	Soon	Jaldī	جلدی
Again, then	Phīr	پھر	Ever	Kabhī	کبھی
In future	Āinda	آئندہ	Never	Kabhī nahīn	کبھی نہیں
Every day	Har roz	ہر روز	Suddenly	Achānak	اچانک
Now-a-days	Āj kal	آج کل	In turns	Bārī bārī	باری باری
Often	Aksar	اکثر	At present	Filhāl	فی الحال

Adverbs of Place

Everywhere	Har jagah	ہر جگہ
No where	Kahin nahīn	کہیں نہیں
By sea	Sumandar kē rāstē	سمندر کے راستے
By land	Khushki kē rāstē	خشکی کے راستے
By air	Hawāī jahāz sē	ہوائی جہاز سے

Adverbs of Quantity

A little	Thofā	تھوڑا	Alone	Akēlā	اکيلا
Even	Bhī	بھی	Enough	Kāfī	کافی
Only	Sirf	صرف	Some	Kuchh	کچھ

Adverbs of Affirmation

Yes	Jī hañ	جی ہاں	Undoubtedly	Bēshak	بیشک
Certainly	Zarūr	ضرور	or Indeed		

Adverbs of Negation

No, Not	Nahīñ	نہیں	Otherwise	Warna	ورنہ
Not at all	Bilkul nahīñ	بالکل نہیں	or nahīñ to		نہیں تو

The following Arabic Adverbs are commonly used in Urdu

At once	Fauran	فوراً	About (nearly)	Taqriban	تقریباً
Per force	Majbūran	مجبوراً	By force	Jabran	جبراً
For example	Māslan	مثلاً	By chance	Ittifāqan	اتفاقاً
probably	Ghālīban	غالباً	Especially	Khusūsan	خصوصاً
Surely	Yaqīnan	یقیناً	Approximately	Takhmīnan	تخمیناً
Commonly / Usually	Umūman	عموماً			

The Conjunction

A conjunction is a word, which is used to connect two words or sentences; as,

And	Aur	اور	That	Keh	کہ
Or	Yā	یا	If	Agar	اگر
But	Lēkin	لیکن	Also, even	Bhī	بھی
However	Magar	مگر	Yet (even then)	Phir bhī	پھر بھی
Because	Kīōñkeh	کیونکہ	Although	Agarcheh	اگرچہ
Since	Chūñkeh	چونکہ	therefore	Is liē	اس لیے
According	Chunāñchēh	چنانچہ	Likewise	Is hī tarah	اسی طرح

The Interjunction

O! "O" or "Ai"	او / اے	Hurrah	Wāh Wāh واہ واہ
Well done	Shābāsh شاباش	Is it really?	Kiā such much کیا سچ ہے
Bravo			
Eh! what!	Haiñ — ! ہیں	Be careful	<u>Khabardār</u> خبردار

THE VERB

There are two principal kinds of Verbs, viz., Transitive and Intransitive.

- (a) A verb is Transitive, if the action has an object without which the sense would be incomplete; as

The dog killed a fox. I saw a man.

Here the sense would be incomplete without mentioning "fox" and "man" and therefore the Verbs "kill" and "see" are both Transitive.

- (b) A Verb is Intransitive if the action does not pass to an Object; as,

The servant is sleeping. The boy ran.

Here the sense is already complete without placing any objects after the Verbs "sleep" or "run". They are therefore Intransitive.

Note :— The Transitive and Intransitive Verbs differ in their use only in the Past Tense.

The Infinitive

The Infinitive expresses only the action or state and is not limited as regards person, number and time; as,

To come, To cut, To fall, To write, etc.

As in English every Infinitive is preceded by "To" so in the same way every Infinitive in Urdu terminates in "nā"

Infinitives

Intransitives			Transitives		
To come	Ānā	آنا	To see	Dēkhnā	دیکھنا
To go	Jānā	جانا	To show	Dikhānā	دکھانا
To sleep	Sonā	سونا	To eat	Khānā	کھانا
To walk	Chalnā	چلنا	To drop	Girānā	گرا نا
To wake (one self)	Jāgnā	جاگنا	To awaken	Jagānā	جگانا
To speak	Bolnā	بولنا	To call	Bulānā	بلانا
To lie down	Lēñnā	لیٹنا	To change	Badalnā	بدلنا
To laugh	Hañsnā	ہنسنا	To write	Likhnā	لکھنا
To bring	Lānā	لانا	To drink	Pīnā	پینا
To sit	Baiṭhnā	بیٹھنا	To open	Kholnā	کھولنا
To wait	Thairnā	ٹھہرنا	To shut	Band karnā	بند کرنا
To fall	Girnā	گرننا	To give	Dēnā	دینا
To rise	Uṭhnā	اٹھنا	To send	Bhejnā	بھیجنا
To arrive or	Pahuñchnā	پہنچنا	To raise		
To reach			To lift up	Uṭhānā	اٹھانا
			To pick up		
To climb			To keep		
To mount	Chañhnā	چڑھنا	To put	Rakhnā	رکھنا
To get on			To place		
To take away or To carry	Lējānā	لے جانا	To say,	Kahnā	کہنا
			To tell		

THE IMPERATIVE

The Urdu Verbs are quite simple and regular in form and it wants but little practice to form any particular part or tense of a Verb, if we know the Infinitive of it.

- (a) The root of a Verb is obtained by omitting the final “n ā” of the Infinitive; as,

To go	Jānā	—	Root	Jā	جا
To speak	bolnā	—	Root	Bol	بول

- (b) The Imperative or “word of command” is formed by adding “o” to the root of a Verb; as,

			Root	Imperative	
To speak	Bolnā	—	Bol	Bolo	بولو
To strike	Mārnā	—	Mār	Māro	مارو
To drop	Girānā	—	Girā	Girāo	گراؤ

Note:— If the root ends either in “e” or “o”, these vowels are dropped, for the sake of euphony, before the termination “o” of the Imperative; as,

			Root	Imperative
To give	Dēnā	—	Dē	Do
To sleep	Sonā	—	So	So

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Come into the room | Kamrē mēñ āo. |
| 2. Bring my horse. | Mera ghofā lāo. |
| 3. Take all things away. | Sab chīzēñ lējāo. |
| 4. Open that box. | Woh snadūq kholo. |
| 5. Put that paper in my pocket | Woh kāghaz mērī jēb mēñ rakho. |
| 6. Send this letter to the mess | Yeh chīṭṭhī mess ko bhējō. |

Prohibition is expressed by using the particle “mat” — “do not” or “don’t” before the Imperative; as,

1. Do not (or don't) go to the mess today. Āj mess ko mat jāo.
2. Don't sit on the chair. Kursī par mat baitho
3. Don't put the bottle under the table. Botal mēz kē nīchē mat rakho.
4. Don't open his room. Uskā kamra mat kholo.
5. Don't climb up that tree. Us darakht par mat chāhō.

EXERCISE 18(A)

1. Bīmār ādmī kē kamrē mēñ jāo. 2. Āj shām ko hamārē kapṛē klab ko lējāo. 3. Hamārē ghar ko do bajē sē pahlē āo. 4. Yeh chīṭṭhī jaldī sē Amjad sāheb kē daftar ko lējāo. 5. Das bajē kē bād barāmdē mēñ mat chalo. 6. Yeh sandūq afsar kē sāmne kholo. 7. Dhoḃī ko bulāo aur hamārē mailē kapṛē us ko do. 8. Dāk khānē ko jāo aur hamārī chīṭṭhīñ lāo. 9. Mērē kamrē kē andar baitho aur dākṭar sāheb kē wāstē ṭhairo. 10. Saḥak kē bīch mēñ mat baiṭho. 11. Yeh sab chīzēñ uṭhāo aur yahāñ sē ēk-dam jāo. 12. Mēz kā kapṛa jaldī sē badlo. 13. Yeh sandūq mērē hukm kē baghair mat kholo. 14. Yeh khat Smith sāheb kē baṅglē ko lējāo.

WORDS

Masculines			Feminines		
Answer	Jawāb	جواب	Needle	Sūī	سوئی
Razor	Ustarā	استرا	Scissors	Qaiñchī	قینچی
Lid	Dhaknā	دھکنا	Sleeve	Āstīn	آستین
Sock	Moza	موزہ	String	Sutlī	سٹلی
Glove	Dastāna	دستانہ	Cord	Ḍorī	ڈوری
Telegram	Tār	تار	Merry (adj.)	Khush	خوش
Letter	Khat	خط	All (adj.)	Sab	سب

EXERCISE 18(B)

1. Bring an answer from the gentleman. 2. Come here next week. 3. Don't go there tomorrow morning. 4. Change the sheet of my bed every day. 5. Put all these things in that carriage. 6. Give me my gloves. 7. Lift up the lid of this box. 8. Write his name on this envelope. 9. Give this book to my brother. 10. Open that door at once. 11. Wait on the verandah for an answer. 12. Don't laugh in front of me. 13. Bearer, come here, there is a large snake behind the box, kill it with a stick. 14. Take away all the things from the table. 15. Don't mount (on) that horse. 16. Get us tea very early tomorrow morning. 17. Eat, drink and be merry.

The use of the Preposition "to"

The preposition "to" must be translated by "k ē pās" (and not by "ko") when it is used before a human being (or a Pronoun), with any of the following Verbs, (which it will be noticed, involve movement from one place to another):—

Jānā	To go	جانا	Lānā	To bring	لانا
Ānā	To come	آنا	Lējānā	To take to	لے جانا
Bhējnā	To send	بھیجنا	Pahuñchnā	To reach	پہنچنا

Note :— Before inanimate objects "to" takes its ordinary form "ko"

EXAMPLES

1. Go to the Post Master.
Post Maṣṭer sāheb kē pās jāo. پوسٹ ماسٹر صاحب کے پاس جاؤ
2. Go to the Post Office.
Ḍāk khāne ko jāo. ڈاک خانہ کو جاؤ
3. Take this letter to my son.
Yeh khat mērē bēṭē kē pās lējāo. یہ خط میرے بیٹے کے پاس لے جاؤ

4. Come to me tomorrow morning.
Kal subah mērē pās āo. کل صبح میرے پاس آؤ
5. Come to my house the day after tomorrow.
Parsoñ mērē ghar ko āo. پرسوں میرے گھر کو آؤ
6. Send this saddle to him.
Yeh zīn uskē pās bhējo. یہ زین اس کے پاس بھیجو
7. Do not bring the car to me today.
Āj kār mērē pās mat lāo. آج کار میرے پاس مت لاؤ

EXERCISE 19(A)

1. Is ādmī kē sāth darzī kē pās jāo. 2. Tum yeh khat Mahmood sāheb kē pās bhējo. 3. Āj Itwār hai, āj us kē pās mat jāo. 4. Yeh ghofā āj shām ko mērē pās lāo. 5. Do ādmī aur tīn laḥkē Alī sāheb kē baṅglē ko bhējo. 6. Hamārē sab jānwar gāoñ sē shahr ko lāo. 7. Is laḥkī ko uskē khāwind kē pās bhējo. 8. Is ghaḥī kī qīmat hamārī dukān ko bhējo. 9. Yeh chīṭṭhī us ādmī kē pās wāpas lējāo. 10. Hamārē hukm kē baghair Post Master sāheb kē pās mat jāo. 11. Yeh sab chīzēñ hamārē dost kē pās lējāo. 12. Woh taswīrēñ bank kē bābū kē pās bhējo.

EXERCISE 19(B)

1. Send this shirt to the tailor. 2. Send this telegram to the office. 3. Do not go to him today. 4. Take this letter to Mr. Lloyd George. 5. Bring that sword to me in the office. 6. Come to my father next week. 7. Come to my bungalow tomorrow evening. 8. Take these chairs to the office. 9. Send a man to the Doctor. 10. Go to the butcher's house, if he is not in the shop. 11. Bring those eggs to me. 12. Send this horse to my friend.

INFINITIVES

Intransitives			Transitives		
To run	Dauṇā	دوڑنا	To hear	Sunnā	سننا
To die	Marnā	مرنا	To know	Jānnā	جاننا
To flow	Bahnā	بہنا	To cut	Kāṭnā	کاٹنا
To come out	Nikalnā	نکلنا	To take out	Nīkālñā	نکالنا
To fly	Uṇnā	اُڑنا	To fill	Bharnā	بھرننا
To live	Rahnā	رہنا	To understand	Samajhnā	سمجھنا
To be angry	<u>Kḥafā</u> honā	خفا ہونا	To work	Kām karnā	کام کرنا
To do	Karnā	کرنا	To take	Lēnā	لینا
To smile	Muskurānā	مسکراتا	To throw	Phēñknā	پھینکنا
To burn	Jalnā	جلا	To make	Banānā	بنانا
To read	Paṭhnā	پڑھنا	To ask	Pūchhnā	پوچھنا
To become	Hojānā	ہوجانا	To clean	Sāf karnā	صاف کرنا
To sell	Bēchnā	بیچنا	To be , To have	Honā	ہونا
To swim	Tairnā	تیرنا	To take off	Utārnā	اُتارنا
To escape	Bachnā	بچنا	To burn	Jalānā	جلا
(from punishment etc.)			To light		
To escape	Bhāgnā	بھاگنا	To buy	<u>Kḥarīdnā</u> or	خریدنا
(from danger etc.)				Mol lēnā	یامول لینا
To advance	Āgē baḥñnā		To strike	Mārnā	مارنا
To come forward		آگے بڑھنا	To hit To beat		
To retreat,	Pīchhē haṭñā		To kill	Mār-dālnā	مار دانا
To get back		پہچھٹنا	To prepare	Taiyār karnā	تیار کرنا
To weep, To cry	Ronā	رونا	To get ready	Taiyār honā	تیار ہونا
To shout, To cry			To steal	Churānā	چورانا
To scream	Chil-lānā	چلا نا	To break	Toṭñā	ٹوٹنا
To get down	Utarnā	اُترنا	To put on	Pahennā	پہننا
To dismount			To teach	Sikhānā	سکھانا

Present Participle

Present Participle is formed by adding “tā” or “rah ā” to the root of a verb; as,

		Root		Present Participle	Meaning
To speak	Bolnā	—	Bol	Boltā Bol rahā	Speaks Speaking
To go	Jānā	—	Jā	Jātā Jā rahā	Goes Going

Note :— (1) “ta” added to the root, denotes that the action takes place generally or as a habit; as, goes, sleeps, drinks.

(2) “raha” added to the root denotes action going on at the moment; as, is going, is sleeping, is drinking.

Practice

Form the Present Participles of all the Verbs given in the list on page 74 and 75 first by adding “tā” and then “rah ā”.

Present Tense

The Present Tense is of two kinds; e.g.,

(1) Present Indicative (or Indefinite)

(2) Present Continuous (or Definite).

1. Present Indicative (or Indefinite) shows that the action takes place or happens generally (not necessarily at some definite moment). It is Indefinite as regards time and may even be habitual; as,

(i) My sāheb speaks Urdu.

(ii) The tailor makes my suits.

In the above sentences “speaks” and “makes” show that the action takes place as a rule (not necessarily at the moment). These will be expressed by the Present Participles formed by adding “tā”; as, Boltā, Banātā, etc.

2. Present Continuous (or definite) Tense is used when we wish to define more precisely the exact moment at which a certain action is going on; as,

(i) Look ! the sun is rising.

(ii) The saheb is speaking to a friend.

In the above sentences “rising” and “speaking” show that the action is taking place just now, and is not completed yet. They will be expressed by adding “rahā” as, “Nikal rah ā”, “Bol rah ā”.

Note :— “Rahā” is the Past-Participle of “Rahn ā”, to remain, to be (in the act or state of).

MODEL CONJUGATIONS

Present Indicative (or Indefinite)

Singular		Plural	
I go	Maiñ jātā hūñ	We go	Ham jātē haiñ
Thou goest	Tū jātā hai	You go	Tum jātē ho
He goes	Woh jātā hai	They go	Woh jātē haiñ
She goes	Woh jātī hai	They go (f.)	Woh jātī haiñ

Present Continuous (or Definite)

Singular		
I am going	Maiñ jā rahā hūñ	میں جا رہا ہوں
Thou art going	Tū jā rahā hai	تو جا رہا ہے
He is going	Woh jā rahā hai	وہ جا رہا ہے
She is going	Who jā rahī hai	وہ جا رہی ہے

Plural		
We are going	Ham jā rahē haiñ	ہم جا رہے ہیں
You are going	Tum jā rahē ho	تم جا رہے ہو
They are going	Woh jā rahē haiñ	وہ جا رہے ہیں
They are going (f.)	Woh jā rahī haiñ	وہ جا رہی ہیں

Practice

Conjugate like the above Model Conjugations the following verbs, Khānā, Pīnā, Sonā, Dēkhnā and Chalnā.

Past Imperfect Tense

Like the Present Tense, the Past Imperfect is also of two kinds, e.g., the Definite the Indefinite as will be seen from the following conjugations:—

Past Imperfect (Indefinite)

I, He, etc. was going (usually)

Singular	Plural	
Maiñ jāta thā	Ham jāte thē	ہم جاتے تھے
Tū jāta thā	Tum jāte thē	تم جاتے تھے
Woh jāta thā	Woh jāte thē	وہ جاتے تھے
Woh jāti thī (she)	Woh jāti thiñ (f.)	وہ جاتی تھیں

Past Imperfect (Definite)

Singular	Plural	
Main jā rahā thā	Ham jā rahē thē	ہم جا رہے تھے
Tū jā rahā thā	Tum jā rahē thē	تم جا رہے تھے
Woh jā rahā thā	Woh jā rahē thē	وہ جا رہے تھے
Woh jā rahī thī (she)	Woh jā rahī thiñ (f.)	وہ جا رہی تھیں

Formation of a Sentence

1st — The Position of the Nominative or the subject, with all its “enlargements”, is at the very beginning of a sentence, as it is in English.

2nd — The Position of the Object with all its “enlargements” is after the subject.

3rd — The Verb with all its “enlargements” is placed at the extreme end of the sentence.

Note:— (1) The enlargements of a Noun are the Adjective and the Possessive Pronouns; as, *My good horse*.

Note:— (2) The enlargements of a Verb are the Adverbs; as, *He was badly wounded*. The child is *not* sleeping.

Note:— (3) The enlargements must be used before their respective Nouns or Verbs, as in English.

EXAMPLES

1. The man was going to the office.

(man, office to, going was)—

Ādmī daftar ko jātā thā.

(Indefinite)

Ādmī daftar ko jā rahā thā

(Definite)

2. His brother was sleeping in the small room.

His brother

small room in

sleeping was

Uskā bhāī,

chhoṭē kamrē mēñ,

so rahā thā.

3. My servant is not reading your book.

My servant

your book

not reading is

Mērā naukār,

ap kī kitāb,

nahīñ parh rahā hai.

4. I am not writing any letter now.

I	any letter	now not writing am
Maiñ,	koī chīṭhī,	ab nahīñ likh rahā hūñ.

5. He always brings my tea late.

He	my tea	always late	brings
Woh,	mērī chāē,	hamēsha dēr sē,	lātā hai.

EXERCISE 20(A)

Gosht	Meat	گوشت	Khūb (adv.)	Well	خوب
Kām	Work	کام	Pahlē (adv.)	First	پہلے
Hajjām	Barber	جھام			

1. Tum kiā bēchtē ho? 2. Maiñ qasāī hūñ aur gosht bēchtā hūñ. 3. Hajjām subah ko dukān kholtā hai aur shām ko band kartā hai. 4. Maiñ dēkhtā hūñ keh woh ādmī mērē baṅglē ko hamēsha ātē haiñ. 5. Tum unhēñ (or unko) kioñ nahīñ roktē ho? 6. Mērē dost kē bēṭē har mahīnē do dafa shikār ko jātē haiñ. 7. Yeh ādmī bahut achchhā kām kartā hai. 8. Tum is ādmī ko jāntē ho? 9. Main usē (or usko) Khūb jāntā hūñ? 10. Woh pahlē hoṭel mēñ rahtā thā, ab klab kē qarīb ēk baṅgle mēñ rahtā hai. 11. Main khat kē jawāb hamēsha fauran dētā hūñ. 12. Uskī bīwī har roz shām ko ṭenis khēltī thī, āp kioñ nahīñ khēltī haiñ?

EXERCISE 20(B)

Fort	Qila	قلعہ	Child	Bach-cha	بچہ
Sun	Sūraj	سورج	Sight	Tamāsha	تماشہ

1. He comes to me in the morning, I go to him in the evening, then we go to the club, and play tennis. 2. I do not buy anything from his shop. 3. My servant never steals anything. 4. Do you live in the front. 5. We do not see him everyday. 6. What time do you rise in the morning? 7. I rise when the sun rises. 8. Sometimes this man laughs, sometimes he cries, and sometimes he plays like a child. 9. She was writing letters to me now and then, but now she does not send any; I do not know (that) why? 10. My servants understand English well, but I speak Urdu to them. 11. You see that thing everyday and yet you do not know its name. 12. What does he do in the evening?

WORDS

Phūl	Flower	پھول	Nāchnā	To dance	ناچنا
Pul	Bridge	پل	Bhauñknā	To bark	بھونکن
Hawāī jahāz	Aeroplane	ہوائی جہاز	Kē ūpar	Over	کے اوپر

EXERCISE 21(A)

1. Maiñ yeh pūchh rahā hun, keh tum mērā sandūq kioñ khol rahē thē? 2. Yeh ādmī yahāñ kiā kar rahā hai? 3. Tum kahāñ jā rahē ho? 4. Sab naukar barāmdē mēñ hañs rahē thē. 5. Dēkho sūraj nikal rahā hai aur tum abhī tak so rahē ho. 6. Yeh lafkē kiā lējā rahē haiñ? 7. Ghofā thīk chal rahā hai, tum usē (us ko) kioñ mār rahē ho? 8. Lafkē likh rahē thē, lēkin lafkīñ khēl rahī thīñ. 9. Gāē phūl khā rahī hai, aur kuttā us par bhauñk rahā hai. 10. Sāīs ghofā taiyār kar rahā hai. 11. Us waqt shahr kē ūpar ēk hawāī jahāz uf rahā thā, aur sab log usē dēkh rahē thē. 12. Tum kiā dēkh rahē ho, yahāñ koī tamāsha ho rahā hai, yā koī nāch rahā hai?

EXERCISE 21(B)

People	Log	لوگ	Back (adv.)	Wāpas	واپس
Mad	Pāgal	پانگل	To alight	Utarnā	اُترنا

1. I am writing a letter to your father. 2. He is laughing like a mad man. 3. Who is this gentleman, who is coming towards us? 4. The train is still moving, do not alight. 5. Why are these men shouting here? 6. What were you doing in his room? 7. When we were coming back from the club, the women were going to the city. 8. The thieves were selling their things in the bazaar. 9. If the sick man is sleeping, do not awaken him. 10. My wife is giving some food to the poor people. 11. All the soldiers are cutting a large tree near the bridge. 12. All the friends are eating and drinking. 13. I was speaking to the girl whose father lives near my house. 14. Whom are you calling? 15. What! are you still sleeping? 16. Is my servant asleep or awake?

The Past Participle

The Past Participle is formed by adding "a" to the root, but if the root ends in "a" or "o", then "ya" is added; as,

			Root	Past Part.	
To speak	Bolnā	—	Bol	Bolā	بول
To fly	Uḥnā	—	Uḥ	Uḥā	اُڑا
To drink	Pīnā	—	Pi	Pīā	پیا
To bring	Lānā	—	La	Lāyā	لایا
To sleep	Sonā	—	So	Soyā	سویا

Exceptions:— *The following are the only Infinitives that take their Past Participles irregularly.*

		Masculine		Feminine	
		Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
To do	Karnā	—	Kīā کیا Kīē کیے	Kī کی	Kīñ کیں
To take	Lēnā	—	Līā لیا Līē لیے	Lī لی	Līñ لیں
To give	Dēnā	—	Dīā دیا Dīē دیے	Dī دی	Dīñ دیں
To be	Honā	—	Hūā ہوا Hūē ہوئے	Hūī ہوئی	Hūīñ ہویں
To go	Jānā	—	Gayā گیا Gaē* گئے	Gāī گئی	Gāīñ گئیں

Note : — * Past Participles, formed by adding “ya” drop their “y” when “a” is changed into “e” or “i” for Gender and Number; as, He slept-Woh Soya, She slept-Woh soi. They slept-Woh soe.

Past Tense

(I, thou, he etc. walked)

Singular		Plural	
I walked	Maiñ chalā میں چلا	We walked	Ham chalē ہم چلے
Thou walked	Tū chalā تو چلا	You walked	Tum chalē تم چلے
He walked	Woh chalā وہ چلا	They walked	Woh chalē وہ چلے
She walked	Woh chalī وہ چلی	They walked (f.)	Woh chalīñ وہ چلیں

Past Perfect

Singular		
I have walked	Main chalā hūñ	میں چلا ہوں
Thou hast walked	Tū chalā hai	تو چلا ہے
He has walked	Woh chalā hai	وہ چلا ہے
She has walked	Woh chalī hai	وہ چلی ہے

Plural		
We have walked	Ham chalē haiñ	ہم چلے ہیں
You have walked	Tum chalē ho	تم چلے ہو
They have walked	Woh chalē haiñ	وہ چلے ہیں
They have walked (f.)	Woh chalī haiñ	وہ چلی ہیں
Pluperfect		
Singular		
I had walked	Maiñ chalā thā	میں چلا تھا
Thou hadst walked	Tū chalā thā	تو چلا تھا
He had walked	Woh chalā thā	وہ چلا تھا
She had walked	Woh chalī thī	وہ چلی تھی
Plural		
We had walked	Ham chalē thē	ہم چلے تھے
You had walked	Tum chalē thē	تم چلے تھے
They had walked	Woh chalē thē	وہ چلے تھے
They had walked (f.)	Woh chalī thīñ	وہ چلی تھیں

Past Dubious Tense

The Past Dubious Tense is formed by adding the Future Tense of the Verb "to be" i.e., "hog ā" etc., to the Past Tense of a Verb: as,

Singular	Plural
I might have walked Maiñ chalā hūñgā. میں چلا ہوں گا	We might have walked. Ham chalē hoñgē. ہم چلے ہوں گے

Singular	Plural
<p>Thou might have walked. Tū chalā hogā. تو چلا ہوگا</p> <p>He might have walked. Woh chalā hogā. وہ چلا ہوگا</p> <p>She might have walked. Woh chalī hogī. وہ چلی ہوگی</p>	<p>You might have walked. Tum chalē hogē. or Ap chalē hoṅgē.</p> <p>They might have walked. Woh chalē hoṅgē.</p> <p>They (f.) might have walked. Woh chalī hoṅgī.</p>

Examples

- He brought my book from the office.
(He, my book, office from, brought)—
Woh mēri kitāb daftar sē lāyā.
- My son has gone to your house.
(My son, your house to, gone has [is])—
Mērā bēṭā tumhārē ghar ko gayā hai.
(or) Mērā bēṭā Āp kē ghar ko gayā hai.
- The servants have fallen from the horses.
(Servants, horses from, fallen have [are])—
Naukar ghoṛōñ sē girē haiñ.
- Your son had slept here.
Your son, here, slept had, [was])—
Tumhārā bēṭā yahāñ soyā thā.
- She did not come here yesterday.
She, yesterday, here not (came)—
Woh kal yahāñ nahīñ āī.

Exercise 22(a)

Guest	Mehmān	مہمان	Host	Mēzbān	میزبان
Merrily (adv.)	<u>Khūshī</u> sē	خوشی سے	Roof	Chhat	چھت

1. Hamārā ghofā Franklin sāheb kē pās kaun lēgayā hai? 2. Kal rāt ko maiñ ghar kī chhat par soyā thā. 3. Āj tum daftar sē kitnē bajē wāpas āē? 4. Tumhārē sāheb kahāñ gaē haiñ? 5. Woh kal shām ko darzī kē pās gayā, aur mērē sab kaprē us sē lāyā. 6. Jab bach-cha jāgā, to uskī māñ bahut hañsī, aur jaldī sē uskē pās āī. 7. Maiñ nahiñ jāntā hūñ keh āj hamārā mehmān kioñ nahiñ āyā. 8. Gharīb sāis pichhlē mahinē ghoṛē sē girā thā aur abhī tak tandurust nahiñ hūa hai. 9. Jab mērī gāfī bañglē mēñ pahuñchī, to mērī bīwī aur bach-chē gāfī kī ṭaraf dauṛē. 10. Maiñ is ghoṛē par kabhī nahiñ chāṛhā hūñ. 11. Woh khūshī sē yeh khābar mērē pās lāē. 12. Jab ghar kī chhat girī to sab naukār bahut chil-lāē. 13. Bīmār ādmī palañg par lēṭā thā. aur uskē dost aur mēzbān uskē pās kursioñ par baiṭhē thē.

Exercise 22(b)

India	Bhārat	بھارت	Joy	<u>Khūshī</u>	خوشی
Postman	Postman	پوسٹمیں	News	<u>Khābar</u>	خبر
	or Dākya	ڈاکیہ	Report	<u>Khābar</u>	خبر

1. Who has brought this letter? 2. The Postman has gone towards the mess. 3. When did you come here? 4. He never came to me. 5. How long did you wait there? 6. I have lived in India before. 7. We advanced and the enemy retreated. 8. The bridge has fallen into the river. 9. When did the Mail arrive? 10. We slept in the Dak bungalow. 11. The horse died last night. 12. Whose servant climbed (up) the tree? 13. When had the boys come here? 14. Whose keys had fallen there? 15. Who had gone to the College? 16. He stayed with me for three hours.

Past Tenses of Transitive Verbs

The foregoing rule deals with the Past Tenses of Intransitive Verbs only. The following is the rule for the Past Tenses of Transitive Verbs.

- (a) The Particle “nē” (which has no proper translation in English, but can be regarded as equivalent to “by”) is used after the subject of the following.

Past Tenses of the Transitive Verbs :—

1. Simple Past Perfect Tense; — I saw (Me by saw)
2. Past Perfect Tense;—I have seen (Me by seen is)
3. Pluperfect Tense; — I had seen (Me by seen was)
4. Past Dubious Tense; — I might have seen (Me by seen will be)

- (b) When “nē” is used after the Subject, the Verb must agree in Gender and Number with the Object unless the latter is followed by a Post-Position.

- (c) “Nē” like a Post-position inflects the Nouns, after which it is used.

EXAMPLES

1. The boy saw a horse (boy by a horse saw)—
Laḥkē nē ēk ghōḥā dēkhā. لڑکے نے ایک گھوڑا دیکھا
2. The man saw two horses (Man by two horses saw)—
Ādmī nē do ghōḥē dēkhē. آدمی نے دو گھوڑے دیکھے
3. The servant saw a mare (servant by a mare saw)—
Naukar nē ēk ghōḥī dēkhī. نوکر نے ایک گھوڑی دیکھی
4. The servants saw two mares.
(Servants by two mares saw)—
Naukarōn nē do ghorīān dēkhīn. نوکروں نے دو گھوڑیاں دیکھیں

Conjugation

I saw	a horse	Maiñ nē	ēk ghofā dēkhā.
Thou sawest		Tū nē	
He saw		Us nē	
She saw		Us nē	
We saw	a horse	Ham nē	ēk ghofā dēkhā*
You saw		Tum nē	
They saw		Unhoñ nē	

*As the Past Participle ends in "a", it is subject to change to agree in Number and Gender with the Object. Thus if the Object were "horses", "dēkhā" would become "dēkhē": if a mare, "dēkhī"; if mares "dēkhīñ". Similarly in the following tenses the Verb "honā" is made to agree in Gender and Number with the object.

Past Perfect Tense

I have seen	a horse	Maiñ nē	ēk ghofā dēkhā hai**
He has seen		Us nē	
You have seen		Tum nē	
They have seen		Unhon nē	

** "Dēkhā hai" becomes "dēkhē haiñ" if horses; "dēkhī hai" if a mare; "dēkhī haiñ" if mares.

Pluperfect Tense

I had seen	a horse	Maiñ nē	ēk ghofā dēkhā thā*
He had seen		Us nē	
You had seen		Tum nē	
They had seen		Unhoñ nē	

* "Dēkhā thā" would become "dēkhē thē" if horses; "dēkhī thī" if a mare; "dēkhī thīñ" if mares.

Past Dubious Tense

I might have seen		Main nē	
He might have seen	a horse	Us nē	ēk ghoṛā dēkhā hogā**
You might have seen		Tum nē	
They might have seen		Unhoñ nē	

** "Dēkhā hogā" would become "dēkhē hoñgē" if horses; "dēkhī hogī" if a mare; "dekhi hongī" if mares.

Note:— If the Object of a Transitive Verb is some particular person or thing the Post-position "ko" is used after it to make it *definite*, and in that case the Verb remains unchanged. When the Object of a Transitive Verb is a human being whether definite, or not, it is always safe to use "ko" after it.

Examples

I have seen the mare	Maiñ nē ghoṛī ko dēkhā hai.
They have seen the horses	Unhoñ nē ghoṛoñ ko dēkhā hai.
We saw the girl	Ham nē laṛkī ko dēkhā.
She saw the boys	Us nē laṛkoñ ko dēkhā.

Exercise 23(a)

Girjā	Church	گرجا	Āfsar	Officer	افسر
Aisā	Such	ایسا	Pūlis	Police	پولیس
Chēk	Cheque	چیک	To	Then	تو
Badmāsh	Wicked	بد معاش	Pahlī dafa	First time	پہلی دفعہ

1. Ghūsl khānē kā darwāza kis nē kholā hai? 2. Jab dhobī kapṛē lāyā,

to naukar nē darwāza kholā aur kaprē sandūq mēñ rakhē. 3. Khazānē kē afsar nē usko chēk kā rūpia nahīñ diā. 4. Mērē bēṭē nē sab purānī kitābēñ gharib lafkē ko diñ. 5. Us nē choroñ ko dēkhā. 6. Maiñ nahīñ jāntā hūñ kē us nē yeh chitthī mērē pās kioñ bhējī hai. 7. Maiñ nē aisā tamāsha kabhī nahīñ dēkhā hai. 8. Dhobī nē qasāi kē ghar kā tālā toṛā. 9. Tum nē hamārē kaprē klub ko kioñ nahīñ bhējē? 10. Is sipāhī nē pūlis ko jhūṭī khabar bhējē. 11. Chār ādmioñ nē bahut sharāb pī, ēk dukān kē andar gaē, aur uskī sab khirkīāñ toṛīñ. 12. Bādshāh nē ēk bahut ach-chhā ghoṛā vazīr ko diā hai. 13. Ghorōñ nē abhī tak dānā nahīñ khāyā hai. 14. Badmāsh lafkōñ nē ḍāk gāṛī par patthar phēñkē. 15. Maiñ nahīñ jāntā hūñ keh us nē mērī jēb sē ghafī kab aur kaisē nikālī. 16. Maiñ nē us lafkī ko pahlī dafa girjā mēñ dēkhā thā.

Exercise 23(b)

Translate into English:—

۱۔ غسل خانہ کا دروازہ کس نے کھولا ہے۔ ۲۔ جب دھوبی کپڑے لایا تو نوکر نے دروازہ کھولا اور کپڑے صندوق میں رکھے۔ ۳۔ خزانے کے افسر نے اس کو چیک کا روپیہ نہیں دیا۔ ۴۔ میرے بیٹے نے سب پڑائی کتابیں غریب لڑکے کو دیں۔ ۵۔ اس نے چوروں کو دیکھا۔ ۶۔ میں نہیں جانتا ہوں کہ اس نے یہ چھٹی میرے پاس کیوں بھجی ہے۔ ۷۔ میں نے ایسا تماشا کبھی نہیں دیکھا ہے۔ ۸۔ دھوبی نے قصائی کے گھر کا تالا توڑا۔ ۹۔ تم نے ہمارے کپڑے کلب کو کیوں نہیں بھیجے۔ ۱۰۔ اس سپاہی نے پولیس کو جھوٹی خبر بھیجی۔ ۱۱۔ چار آدمیوں نے بہت شراب پی، ایک دکان کے اندر گئے اور اس کی سب کھڑکیاں توڑ دیں۔ ۱۲۔ بادشاہ نے ایک بہت اچھا گھوڑا وزیر کو دیا ہے۔ ۱۳۔ گھوڑوں نے ابھی تک دانہ نہیں کھایا ہے۔ ۱۴۔ بدعاش لڑکوں نے ڈاک گاڑی پر پتھر پھینکے۔ ۱۵۔ میں نہیں جانتا ہوں کہ اس نے میری جیب سے گھڑی کب اور کیسے نکالی۔ ۱۶۔ میں نے اس لڑکی کو پہلی مرتبہ گر جابیں دیکھا تھا۔

Exercise 23(c)

Cup	Pīālā	پیالہ	Monkey	Bandar	بندر
Garden	Bāgh	باغ	Shirt (f.)	Qamīz	قمیض
Telegram	Tār	تار	Permission (f.)	Ijāzat	اجازت
Washerman	Dhobī	دھوبی			

1. The servant opened the door. 2. She has broken two cups. 2. My son wrote a letter. 4. He has made two keys. 5. The girl has brought a lock. 6. He put the egg in my box. 7. What has this man done? 8. To whom did you give my letter? 9. I have brought two shirts from the tailor. 10. Where did you see my servant? 11. Who has made this table? 12. I might have seen the man. 13. My servants have burnt all the old letters of the office. 14. The washerman has changed my new shirt. 15. Did she show you the telegram? 16. When did you send that letter to me? 17. I did not call you. 18. He opened the letters without my permission. 19. Where did you put my watch last night? 20. The monkey broke all the windows of the shop. 21. I have never read such a good book before.

TRANSITIVE VERBS — (Continued)

It is very important to notice that some Verbs, which are Transitive in English, are treated as Intransitive in Urdu and, therefore, do not require the particle “nē” after the Subject in the Past Tense. They are as follows:—

To forget	Bhūlnā	بھولنا	To fight	Lāfnā	لڑنا
To bring	Lānā	لانا	To meet	Milnā	ملنا
To mount	Chāḥnā	چڑھنا	To speak	Bolnā	بولنا
To reach	Pahuñchnā	پہنچنا	To take away	Lējānā	لے جانا
To fear	Ārnā	ڈرنا	To finish	Chuknā	چکنا
				Khatam karnā	ختم کرنا

Examples

1. Our soldiers fought the battle bravely.

Hamārē sipāhī lafāī bahādurī sē lafē. ہمارے سپاہی لڑائی بہادری سے لڑے۔

2. He brought your horse to me.

Woh tumhārā ghōfā mērē pās lāyā. وہ تمہارا گھوڑا میرے پاس لایا۔

3. He mounted the horse.

Woh ghōfē par chāhā. وہ گھوڑے پر چڑھا۔

Past Conditional Tense

Conditional sentences are those in which one eventually is dependent on another. Past conditions are expressed in Urdu by using the present Participle, without any auxiliary Verb in both halves of the sentence, the first half being introduced by “agar” (if) and the second by “to” (then). The present Participles agree in Gender and Number with their respective Subjects.

If	the boy had come	then	the girl would have gone
agar	laḥkā ātā	to	laḥkī jātī

PAST CONDITIONAL TENSE (CONJUGATED)

Singular		
Had I seen	Agar main dēkhtā	اگر میں دیکھتا
Had thou seen	Agar tū dēkhtā	اگر تو دیکھتا
Had he seen	Agar who dēkhtā	اگر وہ دیکھتا
Had she seen	Agar woh dēkhtī	اگر وہ دیکھتی
Plural		
Had we seen	Agar ham dēkhtē	اگر ہم دیکھتے
Had you seen	Agar tum dēkhtē	اگر تم دیکھتے
Had they seen	Agar woh dēkhtē	اگر وہ دیکھتے
Had they seen (f.)	Agar woh dēkhtīñ	اگر وہ دیکھتیں

THEN		
I would have gone	To maiñ jātā	تو میں جاتا
Thou would have gone	To tū jātā	تو تو جاتا
He would have gone	To woh jātā	تو وہ جاتا
She would have gone	To who jātī	تو وہ جاتی
THEN		
We would have gone	To ham jātē	تو ہم جاتے
You would have gone	To tum jātē	تو تم جاتے
They would have gone	To woh jātē	تو وہ جاتے
They would have gone (f.)	To woh jātiñ	تو وہ جاتیں

EXAMPLES

1. If you had slept here, (then) I would have awakened you.
Āgar tum yahāñ sotē, to maiñ tum ko jagātā.
2. If he had sent for me, I would have come.
Āgar woh mujh ko bulātā, to maiñ atā.
3. If you had brought the cloth, I would have bought it.
Āgar tum kapfā lātē, to maiñ kharīdā.
4. Had they come here, she would have waited.
Āgar woh yahāñ ātē, to woh ṭhairtī.
5. Had the girls seen you, they would have laughed.
Āgar laḳīñ tum ko dēkhīñ, to woh hañstīñ.

Note:— Instead of “would have”, “might have” is used in English to show doubt or uncertainly, and “must have” to denote certainty. The construction in Urdu is the same, except that words “shāyad” (perhaps) and “zarūr” (certainly) are inserted respectively in the second sentence; as,

1. If they had taken the boy to a doctor, he might not have died.
Āgar woh laṛkē ko ḍāḳṭār sāheb kē pās lējātē, to shāyad woh nahīn martā.
2. If my son had seen you, he must have called you.
Āgar mērā bēṭā tum ko dēkhtā, to woh tum ko zarūr bulātā.

EXERCISE 24(A)

Dāna	Grain	دانہ	Chokar (f.)	Bran	چوکر
Jaṅgal	Jungle	جنگل	Jaṅglī	Wild	جنگلی
Āg (f.)	Fire	آگ	Ḍāk gāfī	Mail Train	ڈاک
Ḍāk	Mail	ڈاک			گاڑی

1. Agar maiñ daftar ko jāṭā, to tumhārē wāstē bāzaār sē kāghaz lātā.
2. Agar āp yeh chit-thī mērē bēṭē kē pās lējātē, to woh āpkē sāth jāṭā.
3. Agar chor mērē baṅglē kē andar āṭā, to kuttā uskē pīchhē dauṛtā.
4. Agar tum rāt ko jaṅgal mēñ āg jalātē, to shēr aur sab jaṅglī jānwar bhāgtē.
5. Agar who bandūq bēchtā, to maiñ usko do sau rupai dētā.
6. Agar mērā naukār dānā yā chokar churātā, to maiñ usko pūlis mēñ bhējtā.
7. Agar mērē naukār kē bach-chē rāt ko chil-lātē, to maiñ unko bahut mārṭā.
8. Agar daftar kē ādmī tum ko jāntē, to woh tum ko mērī ḍāk zarūr dētē.
9. Agar uskī bēṭī yeh khabar suntī, to woh bahut rotī.
10. Agar woh auratēñ mērī dukān ko āṭīñ, to shāyad bahut chīzēñ kharīdtīñ.
11. Agar woh ḍāk gāfī sē bhī āṭē, to bhī abhī tak yahāñ nahīñ pahuñchtē.

EXERCISE 24(B)

Reward	Inām	انعام	Recommendation	Sifārish	سفارش
To steal	Churānā	چُرانا	Receipt	Rasīd	رِسید
Engineer	Injīnyar	انجینئر	Guard	Gārd	گارڈ

1. If he had sold the horse, my son would have bought it. 2. If you had gone to the office, you would have seen me. 3. If he knew it, I would not have sent the letter. 4. Had the boy seen the watch, he would have given it to me. 5. Had I broken the cup, I would have told you. 6. Had these men come to me, I might have given them work. 7. Had the engineer seen you here, he would have called you. 8. Had the postmaster given me any receipt, I must have brought it to you. 9. If the girls had gone to the school, the women must have seen them. 10. If you had told the guard, he might have awakened you.

The Aorist Tense

The Aorist Tense (e.g., I may go, he may come, etc.) is formed by adding, to the root of the Verb, the following endings for the different Persons:—

Singular			Plural		
I	(takes)	Root + ūñ	We	(takes)	Root + ēñ
Thou	"	Root + ē	You	"	Root + o
He & She	"	Root + ē	They	"	Root + ēñ

Aorist Tense (Conjugated)

I may go	Maiñ jāūñ	میں جاؤں	We may go	Ham jāēñ	ہم جائیں
Thou may go	Tū jāē	تو جائے	You may go	Tum jāo	تم جاؤ
He may go	Woh jāē	وہ جائے	They may go	Woh jāēñ	وہ جائیں
She may go					

Note:— (a) When “may” denotes doubt or uncertainty the word “shāyad” (perhaps) is inserted in the sentence; as:

1. I may write a letter to him.

Shāyad maiñ us ko ēk khat likhūñ. شاید میں اس کو ایک خط لکھوں

2. My servant may bring the horse.
Shāyad mērā naukār ghōḡā lāē. شاید میرا نوکر گھوڑا لائے
3. We may go there today.
Shāyad ham āj wahāñ jāēñ. شاید ہم آج وہاں جائیں
4. You may see him in the office.
Shāyad tum usko daftār mēñ dēkho. شاید تم اس کو دفتر میں دیکھو
5. They may not arrive here by ten.
Shāyad woh das bajē tak yahāñ nahīñ pahuñchēñ. شاید وہ دس بجے تک یہاں نہیں پہنچیں

Note:— (b) The Aorist Tense is employed in Urdu, when the Present Indefinite Tense occurs in English after “if”, “when” and “until” and the Verb of the second clause is in the Imperative; as will be seen from the following examples.

6. If he comes here, give him this letter.
Agar woh yahāñ āē (not “ātā hai”), to yeh chīṭ-ṭhī usko do.
7. When I go there, show me the carriage.
Jab main wahāñ jāūñ to mujh ko gāḡī dikhāo.
8. If he laughs again, turn him out.
Agar woh phir hañsē, to usko nikālo.

EXERCISE 25(A)

Itwār	Sunday	اتوار	Kishti	Boat	کشتی
-------	--------	-------	--------	------	------

1. Shāyad main aglē itwār ko girjā jāūñ. 2. Shāyad āj sham ko woh bāgh mēñ āē. 3. Shāyad aglē mahīnē mēñ ham tum ko do qamīsēñ dēñ. 4. Shāyad dushman āj rāt ko pul toṛē. 5. Shāyad dākya hamārī chīṭ-thiāñ daftār ko lējāē. 6. Shāyad hamārē mehmān āj hoṭāl mēñ Khānā Khāēñ. 7. Shāyad mērā naukār dāk gāḡī sē āē. 8. Shāyad woh badmāsh ādmī yeh sandūq rāstē mēñ kholēñ. 9. Agar daryā mēñ bahut pānī ho, to shāyad ham kishtiōñ mēñ

jāēñ. 10. Agar darzī hamārē kapfē lāē to sandūq kē andar mat rakho. 11. Agar yeh ādmī ṭhīk kām nahīñ karē, to is ko manījar sāheb kē pās lējāo. 12. Jab editor sāheb daftar mēñ āēñ, to mujh ko kh. bar do. 13. Jab tak ham wāpas na āēñ, tum yahāñ ṭhairo. 14. Agar chaukīdār rāt ko soē, to usko fauran jagāo.

EXERCISE 25(B)

To obey	Mānnā	ماننا	Syce	Sāīs	سائیس
To remind	Yād dilānā	یاد دلانا	Pay	Tankhwāh	تنخواہ

1. I may bring it back tomorrow. 2. He may send you pay from Bombay. 3. We may not cut this tree today. 4. You may not go there tomorrow. 5. They may go across the river in boats. 6. He may not buy your horse. 7. Remind it to me, when I come here tomorrow. 8. If the driver brings my car, send him to my office. 9. When they go to the mess, show them this horse. 10. If he does not obey your order, bring him to me. 11. Wake me up at once, if any one brings a letter for me. 12. If the women come here, send them to the club.

The Future Tense

The Future Tense is formed by adding to the root of a Verb the following terminations for the different Persons;

Singular					Plural			
I	(takes)	Root	+	ūñgā	We	Root	+	ēñgē
Thou	"	"	+	ēgā	You	"	+	ogē
He		"	+	ēgā	They	"	+	ēñgē
She		"	+	ēgī	They (f.)	"	+	ēñgī

Future Tense — Conjugated			
I shall go	Main jāūṅgā	We shall go	Ham jāēṅgē
Thou shalt go	Tu jāēgā	You will go	Tum jāogē
He will go	Woh jāēgā	They will go	Woh jāēṅgē
She will go	Woh jāēgī	They will go (f.)	Woh jāēṅgī

EXAMPLES

- I shall write a letter.
Main ēk chiṭ-ṭhī likhūṅgā. میں ایک چٹھی لکھوں گا
- His servant will not open your box.
Uskā naukār tumhārā sandūq nahīn kholēgā. اس کا نوکر تمہارا صندوق نہیں کھولے گا
- We shall send you there.
Ham tum ko wahān bhējēṅgē. ہم تم کو وہاں بھیجیں گے
- When will you reach Delhi?
Tum Dehlī kab pahuṅchogē? تم دہلی کب پہنچو گے؟
- Will these men sit in this room?
Kiā yeh ādmī is kamrē mēn baiṭhēṅgē? کیا یہ آدمی اس کمرے میں بیٹھیں گے؟
- The mare will not eat this bad grass.
Ghoṛī yeh kharāb ghāṁs nahīn khāēgī. گھوڑی یہ خراب گھاس نہیں کھائے گی
- His daughters will come here this evening.
Uskī bēṭiāñ āj shām ko yahān āēṅgī. اُس کی بیٹیاں آج شام کو یہاں آئیں گی

EXERCISE 26(A)

Qasūr	Fault	قصور	Hāth	Hand	ہاتھ
Pahār	Hill	پہاڑ	Qulī	Coolie	قلی
Fauj	Army	فوج	Faujī; Sipāhī	Soldier	فوجی

1. Tum āj daftar ko kioñ nahīñ jāogē? 2. Woh shikār sē kab wāpas āēgā? 3. Agar yeh tumhārā qasūr nahīñ hai, to woh tum ko sazā nahīñ dēgā. 4. Do sau faujī kal subah pahāñ ko jāēngē. 5. Un kē sāth kaun jāēgā. 6. Āj hamārē naukar hamārā kamra sāf karēngē. 7. Agar tum aisā qasūr phir karogē, to woh tum ko bahut mārēgā. 8. Agar tum sīpahioñ kē hāth phir sharāb bēchogē, to ham tum ko pūlis mēñ bhējēngē. 9. Shāyad dāk gāfi shām ko pāñch bajē yahāñ pahuñchēgī. 10. Tum kal sawērē kitnē bajē uñhogē? 11. Qulī saḥak kab tak taī-yār karēngē? 12. Lafkiāñ aur auratēñ āj rāt ko das bajē yahāñ pahuñchēngī.

EXERCISE 26(B)

Shooting	Shikār	شکار	Advance	Pēshgī	پیشگی
Dance	Nāch	ناچ	Mistake	Ghālti	غلطی
Lame	Lañgfā	لنگڑا	Race (Horse)	Ghuḥdauf	گھڑدوڑ

1. I shall not go to the club today. 2. Will your brother read this book? 3. When will the coolies arrive here? 4. I shall send two servants with you. 5. The Major will not come to the office today. 6. Who will give you two hundred rupees for this lame horse? 7. He will not give you any advance. 8. I shall be ready presently. 9. I know that you will not make such a mistake again. 10. Will you also go with my brother for shooting? 11. His wife will not go with him to the dance. 12. Two mares will also run in the race. 13. I will beat your son, if I see him again in this room.

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 27

(On Exercises from 22 to 28)

Owner	Mālik	مالک	Holiday f.	Chhut-ti	چھٹی
Fruit	Mēwa, phal	میوہ پھل	Bottle f.	Botal	بوتل
Case (state)	Hāl	حال	To spend	Kharch karnā	خرچ کرنا

Ripe, mature	Pakkā	پکا	To look for	Talāsh karnā	تلاش کرنا
To think	Sochnā	سوچنا	To explain	Samjhānā	سمجھانا
Ago	Hūā; hūē (pb.)	ہوا، ہوئے	During	Mēñ; kē arsē mēñ	میں، کے عرصے میں

1. The ripest fruit falls first (of all). 2. Whom are you calling? 3. I do not eat meat often. 4. I am looking for my hat, which I put on this table an hour ago. 5. Why have you not got up yet? 6. What were you doing with that knife? 7. Do you not see what I am doing? 8. Who is this gentleman, who is coming towards us? 9. Where is the envelope on which you wrote the address just now? 10. I am going home, will you come with me? 11. What did you do during the holidays? 12. Somebody is calling you. 13. This is not the stick, which I left in that corner; some one has changed it. 14. If you had told the waiter, he would have brought two bottles of beer, one for you and one for me. 15. I do not know why he has not sent the reply to my letter yet. 16. If you see the dog in the garden, send it back to its owner. 17. If the doctor had come here, I would have shown him the wound. 18. I have heard that he will not do it. 19. If I had given even one hundred rupees to my servant, he would have spent them all in one day. 20. What are you thinking about? 21. I heard all what he said. 22. He may not arrive here by ten. 23. I will give the children all the fruits and flowers, which I brought from the jungle.

The Past Conjunctive

It often happens in English that two or more Verbs are joined together by the Conjunction "and". In such cases, to simplify the construction, the word "and" is omitted and its place is taken by the Conjunctive Participle. This is formed by adding "kar" to the root of Verbs; as,

Having seen	Dēkh kar	دیکھ کر	Having opened	Khol kar	کھول کر
Go and see	Jā kar dēkho.	جا کر دیکھو.	Come and play	Ā kar khēlo.	آ کر کھیلو.

1. He opened the door and came in.
Woh darwāza khol kar andar āyā.
2. I shall go there, and see him,
Maiñ wahāñ jākar usko dēkhūñgā.
3. He laughed and said.
Us nē hañs kar kahā.

EXERCISE 28(A)

Farsh	Floor	فرش	Ghāñs	Grass	گھانس
Hiran	Buck	ہرن	Mehrbānī sē	Please	مہربانی سے

1. Yeh chīṭ-ṭhī Bañk ko dēkar bāzār ko jāo. 2. Yeh chīṭ-ṭhī pañh kar mehrbānī sē iskā jawāb jaldī do. 3. Kamrē sē sab chīzēñ bāhar nikal kar farsh aur dīwārēñ sāf karo. 4. Sāis ghofē ko dāna dē kar ghāñs kē wāstē bāzaār gayā hai. 5. Ham nē ḍāk bañglē mēñ jā kar khānā khāyā. 6. Samī sāheb nē usko tankhwah dē kar bañglē sē nikālā. 7. Sab lafkīāñ ach-chhē kapṛē pahen kar nāch mēñ jāēñgī. 8. Ēk faujī nē apnē kapṛē bēch kar sharāb pī. 9. Tum khānā khā kar jaldī wāpas āo. 10. Maiñ Karāchī jā kar ēk motor kharīdūñgā. 11. Mērī bīwī Quetta pahuñch kar mujh ko khat likhēgī. 12. Hamārē sipāhīōñ nē darakht kāt kar pul banāyā. 13. Hiran shēr ko dēkh kar bhāgā. 14. Woh bīmār ho kar pahār ko gayā hai.

EXERCISE 28(B)

Pillow	Takya	تکیہ	Basket	Tokrī	ٹوکری
To hide	Chhupanā	چھپانا	To rub	Malnā	ملنا
Newspaper	Akhbār	اخبار	Bicycle	Bysikal	بائیسکل

1. Come here, and take off my boots. 2. The monkey took off his

turban, and climbed up a tree. 3. Take off the saddle, and rub the horse well. 4. Put these things in a basket, and send them to my bungalow. 5. Run after him, and call him back. 6. Go to the mess, and bring some cord from Ābdar. 7. My brother will read the newspaper and then give it to you. 8. He stopped the carriage, and gave a rupee to the old man. 9. My servant broke my watch, and hid it under my pillow. 10. Will you sell the horse, and buy a bicycle? 11. He stole my razors, and sold them in the bazaar.

Use of "apnā" اپنا

When a Possessive Pronoun, of whatever person or Number (such as my, our, thy, your, his, their, her, or its, etc.) refers to the Subject of the sentence, and occurs in the same sub-clause as the Subject, it is always translated by "apnā".

EXAMPLES

1. I was reading my book.
Main apnī kitāb paṛh rahā thā. میں اپنی کتاب پڑھ رہا تھا
2. They were coming from their office.
Woh apnē daftār sē ā rahē thē. وہ اپنے دفتر سے آرہے تھے
3. Will you write a letter to your father?
Tum apnē bāp ko khat likhogē? تم اپنے باپ کو خط لکھو گے
4. The girl will take her dog with her.
Lafkī apnā kuttā apnē sāth lējāēgī. لڑکی اپنا کتا اپنے ساتھ لے جائے گی

Note (i) :— In the case of command or the Imperative Mood, (when the Second Personal Pronoun "you" is, as a rule, omitted or understood), if "your" is used; it must be translated by "apnā"; as,

1. Bring your book Apnī kitāb lāo. اپنی کتاب لاؤ
2. Open your box Apnā sandūq kholo. اپنا صندوق کھولو

3. Take this letter with you to the Secretary.

Yeh chiṭ-ṭhī apnē sāth Secretary sāheb kē pās lējāo.

یہ چٹھی اپنے ساتھ سیکریٹری صاحب کے پاس لے جاؤ

Note (2) : — If a Conjunction or a Relative Pronoun is used between the subject of the sentence and the Possessive Pronoun referring to it, the use of “apna” is inadmissible.

1. I and my son will go there.

Maiñ aur mērā (not apnā) bēṭā wahāñ jāēñge. میں اور میرا بیٹا

2. I shall read my book, which is on my table.

Maiñ apnī kitāb paṭhūñgā, jo mērī mēz per hai.

وہاں جائیں گے
میں اپنی کتاب پڑھوں گا جو میری میز پر ہے

Note (3) : — “Apna” is also used as a Reflexive Pronoun to translate the English “myself”, “yourself”, “himself”, etc. as,

1. He found himself in a trap.

Us nē apnē ko ēk jāl mēñ pāyā. اس نے اپنے کو ایک جال میں پایا

2. You have ruined yourself.

Tum nē apnē ko barbād kiā hai. تم نے اپنے کو برباد کیا ہے

EXERCISE 29(A)

Parda	Curtain	پردہ	Izzat	Honour	عزت
-------	---------	------	-------	--------	-----

1. Mujh ko apnī chiṭ-ṭhīñ dikhāo. 2. Apnē sāheb ko hamārā salām do. 3. Apnē kapṭē badal kar mērē pās āo. 4. Mērā naukār chiṭ-ṭhī lē kar apnē ghar ko gayā hai. 5. Gharīb ādmī apnī sab chīzēñ bēchēgā. 6. Tum apnī dukān kīoñ nahīñ kholtē ho? 7. Apnā palañg barāmdē mēñ mat rakho. 8. Sipāhī apnī bandūq apnē sandūq mēñ nahīñ rakhtā hai. 9. Qureshī sāheb nē apnē naukār ko das rupai dē kar usko pahār bhējā. 10. Kuchh log apnī aurtoñ ko pardē mēñ rakhtē haiñ. 11. Tum apnī sab chīzēñ lē kar hamārē

baṅglē sē fauran bāhar jāo. 12. Jab aurat nē apnā bach-chā palaṅg per nahīñ dēkhā to woh bahut roī. 13. Maiñ apnē bāp sē pūchh kar tum ko jawāb dūṅgī. 14. Maiñ apnī ghafī apnē sandūq mēñ rakh kar daftar ko gayā thā. 15. Apnī izzat apnē hāth hai.

EXERCISE 29(B)

Lesson	Sabaq	سبق	Eye (f.)	Āñkh	آنکھ
Wound	Zakhm	زخم	To Waste	Zāē karnā	ضائع کرنا
Wounded	Zakhmī	زخمی	Dacoit	Īākū	ڈاکو
Mouth	Mūñh	منہ	Well	Kūāñ	کنواں
Tent	Īera; Khēma	ڈیرہ / خیمہ	To disgrace	Ruswā karnā	رُسوا کرنا

1. Clean your hands, and change your clothes. 2. Open your book, and read your lesson. 3. He took off his hat, and showed me his wound. 4. You never keep your hands clean. 5. I will give you two rupees from my own pocket. 6. Shut your mouth and open your eyes. 7. When the dacoits arrived, the people ran out of their houses. 8. I shall take my servant with me. 9. My servant will go to his house next week. 10. The poor man was sitting in his shop. 11. Why do you waste your time? 12. The saheb has killed a thief, who was in his tent last night. 13. He and his horse fell into a deep well. 14. Will you see the man who has brought your horse? 15. She will disgrace herself.

Use of “Āp”

آپ

The word “āp” is employed to lay emphasis on the subject of a sentence in the same way that “myself”, “yourself”, “himself”, are used in English. This construction must not be confused with the reflexive apna” which also translates “myself” etc. though with a different meaning (vide Note 3 page 104).

EXAMPLES

1. I will go their myself.
Maiñ āp wahāñ jāūñgā.
2. My servant came here himself.
Mērā naukar āp yahāñ āyā.
3. She has written this letter herself.
Us nē āp yeh chit-ṭhī līkhī hai.
4. Will you yourself live in this room?
Kiā tum āp is kamrē mēñ rahogē?
5. The soldiers themselves will make the bridge.
Sipāhī āp pul banāēñgē?

EXERCISE 30(A)

1. Laḳkē nē āp apnī ghaṭī toṭī hai. 2. Ham āp uskī dūkān ko jāēñgē. 3. Gharīb auratēñ apnē ghar kā kām āp kartī haiñ. 4. Yeh chit-ṭhī maiñ āp Khān Sāheb kē pās lējāūñgā. 5. Mērā saīs āp ghoṭē kē wāstē ghāñs nahīñ lāēgā. 6. Mērē bach-chē āp yeh kitābēñ paṭhēñgē. 7. Dhobī kā bēṭā āp hamārī qamīs taī-yār karēgā. 8. Yeh lifāfa tum mat kholo, maiñ āp kholūñgā. 9. Faujī log āp rāsta sāf karēñgē. 10. Maulvī sāheb nē āp tum ko bāgh mēñ dēkhā thā. 11. Darzī āp kā kām nahīñ kartā hai. 12. Sab naukar apnē kapṛē āp kharīdēñgē. 13. Tum āp qasāī kē pās jāo, aur usko mērē pās lāo.

EXERCISE 30(B)

Address	Pata	پتہ	To drive	Chalānā	چلانا
On foot	Paidal	پیدل	Brave	Bahādur	بہادر

1. I am going that way myself. 2. The king himself will give a reward to his brave soldiers. 3. If the tailor does not come here himself, I will not

give him any work in future. 4. The woman herself was on the horse, and her husband was on foot. 5. Did you yourself see him there? 6. Take this letter to the post office yourself. 7. He did not give me his address himself. 8. He will open his letter himself. 9. She will make the tea herself. 10. Will you come to me yourself? 11. The Saheb will drive his motor himself.

The Days of the Week

English	Urdu	English	Urdu
Sunday	Itwār	Thursday	Jumērāt
Monday	Pīr	Friday	Jumā
Tuesday	Mañgal	Saturday	Hafta
Wednesday	Budh		

N.B. — Days of the week always take 'ko' after them; as, on Sunday — Itwār ko (not Itwār par)

Directions

English	Urdu	English	Urdu
North	Shimāl	East	Mashriq
South	Janūb	West	Maghrib

The Verbal Noun

In English the Infinitive and the Present Participle of a Verb are often used as Noun. In Urdu the Infinitive is employed in the same way and is subject to inflection when governed by a Post-position.

EXAMPLES

Nominative

1.

Rising early is very good.

Sawērē uṭhnā bahut ach-*chhā* hai. سویرے اٹھنا بہت اچھا ہے

Nominative	2.	It is very bad to tell a lie. Jhūt bolnā bahut <u>kharāb</u> hai.	جھوٹ بولنا بہت بُرا ہے
	1.	He is fond of eating. Woh khānē kā shauqīn hai.	وہ کھانے کا شوقین ہے
Objective	2.	The glass was broken in coming. Shīsha ānē mēñ tūt gayā.	شیشہ آنے میں ٹوٹ گیا
	3.	It does not cost anything to be polite. Mīthā bolnē mēñ kuchh <u>kharch</u> nahīñ hotā hai.	میٹھا بولنے میں کچھ خرچ نہیں ہوتا ہے

EXERCISE 31(A)

Jurm	Crime	جرم	Rishwat f.	Bribe	رشوت
Farq	Difference	فرق	Gālī	Abuse	گالی
Dāñt	Tooth	دانت	Dunyā f.	World	دنیا
Bachānā	To save	بچانا	Gānā	To sing	گانا
Kamānā	To earn	کمانا	Hūshyār	Clever	ہوشیار
Tārif karnā	To praise	تعاریف کرنا	Lēnē dēnē mēñ	In dealing	لینے دینے میں

1. Tum tairnā jāntē ho? 2. Mēri bīwī hañsnā nahīñ jāntī hai. 3. Rishwat lēnā aur dēnā donoñ jurm haiñ. 4. Sust ādmī sirf khānā khānā aur khānē kē bād sonā pasand kartē haiñ. 5. Dunyā mēñ gānā aur ronā kaun nahīñ jāntā hai. 6. Kabhī kabhī tārif karnā gālī dēnē sē kharāb hai. 7. Thoñī dēr khēlnā band karo, aur thoñā kām karo. 8. Karnē aur kehnē mēñ bahut farq hai. 9. Yeh bud-dhā ādmī jhūt bolnē mēñ bahut hūshyār hai. 10. Paisa bachānā paisa kamānē kē barābar hai. 11. Bahādur ādmī marnē aur mārñē sē nahīñ ḍartē haiñ. 12. Dūroñ kī jēb sē paise nikālñē āsān nahīñ hai. 13. Woh ādmī lēnē dēnē mēñ thīk nahīñ hai. 14. Har waqt hañsnā aur dāñt nikālñā bahut kharāb ādatēñ haiñ. 15. Āgē bañhnē mēñ kiā mushkilēñ thīñ? 16. Bāt banānā āsān hai, lēkin kām karnā mushkil hai.

EXERCISE 31(B)

Rest	Ārām	آرام	Occupation	Shughl	شغل
Debt	Qarz	قرض	Favourite	Dil pasand	دل پسند
Healthy	Tandrust	تندرست	Wealthy	Daulatmand	دولتمند
Sign	Ishāra	اشارہ	Method	Tarīqa	طریقہ
Excuse	Uzr	عذر	To be silent	Chup rahnā	چپ رہنا
Habit f.	Ādat	عادت	Language f.	Zabān	زبان
To like	Pasand karnā	پسند کرنا	To talk	Bāt karnā	بات کرنا
To smoke	Huqqa pīnā	حقہ پینا	To lend	Qarz dēnā	قرض دینا
To borrow	Qarz lēnā	قرض لینا	To learn	Sīkhnā	سیکھنا
To leave off	Chhoṛnā	چھوڑنا	To bite	Kāṭnā	کاٹنا
To smoke a cigareet	Sigrīṭ pīnā	سیگریٹ پینا	Kitchen	Bāwarchī khāna	باورچی خانہ
To start	Rawāna honā	روانہ ہونا	To begin	shrū karnā	شروع کرنا

1. My servant does not like working. 2. His favourite occupation is talking and smoking behind the kitchen. 3. That was the sign for starting. 4. Lending and borrowing are both bad habits. 5. What is the best method of learning a language? 6. Leave off writing for a short time, and take a little rest. 7. To make an excuse is worse than the fault itself. 8. Their bark is worse than their bite. 9. Early to bed, and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise. 10. It is better to be silent than to speak in anger.

Infinitive of Purpose

In Urdu, as in English, the Infinitive is used to express purpose or intention. In such cases the inflected form of the Infinitive, followed by "ko"

is employed. "Ko" may be omitted when the Verb, preceding the Infinitive, is a Verb of motion specially "ānā" and "j ānā". It will, however, be safer to use "ko" always.

EXAMPLES

1. I sat down under a tree *to take* rest.
Maiñ ārām lēnē (ko) ēk darakhāt kē nīchē baiṭhā.
2. My brother has gone *to play* polo.
Mērā bhāī polo khēlnē (ko) gayā hai.
3. He has come *to take* his pay.
Woh apnī tankh^hwāh lēnē (ko) āyā hai.

EXERCISE 32(A)

<u>Khudā</u>	God	خدا	Pat-thar	Stone	پتھر
Jāsūs	Spy	جاسوس	Mīṭhāī f.	Sweetmeat	میٹھائی
Tār	Wire	تار	Naukar rakhnā	To employ	نوکر رکھنا

1. Maiñ abhī huqqa pīnē ko gayā thā. 2. Woh mērē pās das rupai qarz lēnē ko āyā 3. Ūskē bēṭē moṭor chalānā sīkhnē ko Lahorē gaē haiñ. 4. Jāsūs ṭēlifūn kā tār kāṭnē ko drakht par chaṛhā. 5. Tum uskē kamrē mēñ kiā karnē gaē thē? 6. Khudā nē din kām karnē ko aur rāt ārām karnē ko banāī hai. 7. Maiñ āp ko salām karnē āyā hūñ. 8. Mērā bhāī āj shām khānā khānē ko yahāñ āēgā. 9. Woh sab log tamāsha dēkh^hnē jāēngē. 10. Chor uskē sandūq kā tālā toṛnē ko ēk baṛā pat-thar lāē. 11. Pichhlē mahīnē mērī bahen mujh ko dēkh^hnē ko āīñ. 12. Tum uskē pās kiā pūchhnē ko gaē thē. 13. Maiñ ne tum ko tumhārā mūñh dēkh^hnē ko naukar nahīñ rakhā hai. 14. Tumhārā naukar tum ko bulānē āyā hai. 15. Maiñ tumhārē pās baiṭhnē ko nahīñ āyā hūñ. 16. Tum yahāñ sīkh^hnē ko āē ho keh (or yā) sīkhānē? 17. Yeh do rupai tumhārē mīṭhāī khānē ko haiñ.

EXERCISE 32(B)

Goat	Bakrā	بکرا	She-goat	Bakrī	بکری
To stop	Roknā	روکنا	To pull	Khēchnā	کھینچنا
Watch-maker	Ghaṛī sāz	گھڑی ساز	Sweeper	Mehtar	مہتر
To attack	Hamla karnā	حملہ کرنا	To think	Khīyāl karnā	خیال کرنا
Crowd	Hujūm; Bhīṛ	ہجوم / بھیر	Collector	Kalakṭar sāheb	کلکٹر صاحب
To distribute	Taqsim karnā or Bāñṭnā	تقسیم کرنا / بانٹنا	Head Master	Head Maṣṭer sāheb	ہیڈ ماسٹر صاحب
To live (to exist)	Jinā	جینا	To live (to dwell)	Rahnā	رہنا

1. The tiger came to eat the goat. 2. We do not live to eat, but we eat to live. 3. He will come here to live in this bungalow for two months. 4. My servant came to light the lamp. 5. The manager of the hotel came himself to change the sheet of my bed. 6. The gentleman has come here to learn Urdu. 7. I will give you ten rupees to buy woollen clothes. 8. I do not pay you to break my things. 9. The sweeper will go to Lahore to bring the dogs. 10. I went to see the Collector yesterday. 11. I think you have come here to humbug me. 12. The tailor came to show me the cloth. 13. He went inside to make the beds. 14. The boy has gone to help the wounded. 15. I sent my servant to call a watch-maker. 16. Didn't anybody call to see me? 17. The Police soon arrived to disperse the crowd. 18. The thief took out a knife to attack (upon) me, but I pulled the chain to stop the train. 19. The Head Master gave me ten rupees to buy sweets to distribute among the children.

The Passive Voice

We have seen that the English construction "I have walked" becomes in Urdu, "I am walked." Similarly the English "I am beaten" becomes in Urdu, "go beaten." The latter is called the Passive Voice.

In Urdu, as well as in English, the Passive construction is complicated by the fact that the Object of the action is in the Nominative Form; as, The body was seen, The spy was shot. He was sent ahead.

Here although "Boy," "Spy" and "He" are all in the Nominative, they do not act, but are acted upon. In such cases the Passive Voice of the Verb is used.

The passive Voice is, of course, restricted to Transitive Verbs and is formed by adding "jānā" (to go) to the Past Participle, as:—

To be seen	Dēkhā jānā	دیکھا جانا	To be brought	Lāyā jānā	لايا جانا
------------	------------	------------	---------------	-----------	-----------

Note :— Both the Past Participle and the Auxiliary Verb "jānā" are inflected, so as to agree with the Noun, which is acted upon.

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The box is opened. | Sandūq kholā jātā hai. |
| 2. The eggs are sold | Andē bēchē jātē haiñ. |
| 3. The girl had been seen. | Laṛkī dēkhī gaī thī. |
| 4. The lock will be broken | Tālā tofā jāēgā. |
| 5. The clothes have been brought | Kapṛē lāē gaē haiñ. |
| 6. The mares will be bought. | Ghorīāñ <u>Kharīdī</u> jāēngī. |

EXERCISE 33(A)

Laṛāī	Battle; war	لڑائی	Arzī	Petition	عرضی
Paṭṭan	Regiment	پٹن	Jēl	Jail	جیل

1. Yeh hukm sab paṭṭanoñ ko bhējā gayā thā. 2. Tum ko sab chīzēñ dikhāī gaī thīñ. 3. Bahādur sipāhī jo laṛāī mēñ mārā gayā hai, abhī jawān

thā, aur uskī bīwī ko baḥā inām dīā jāēgā. 4. Sab kamzor aur bīmār sipāhī aglē mahīnē mēñ pahāḥ ko bhējē jāēngē. 5. Dushman kā hawāī jahāz girāyā gayā. 6. Agar tum baṅglē kē pās phir dēkhē jaogē, to jēl ko bhējē jāogē. 7. Sab sipāhī chhuṭ-ṭī sē wāpas bulāē gaē haiñ. 8. Ab yeh hukm likhā gayā hai, ab badlā nahīñ jāēgā. 9. Hamārī chūṭ-ṭhī kis kē sāmñē kholī gaī thī? 10. Tumhārī arzī Jaj Sāheb kē sāmñē rakhī jāēgī.

EXERCISE 33(B)

Waste paper	Raddī kāghaz	رَدّی کاغذ	To make noise	Shor karnā	شور کرنا
Effects	Asbāb	اسباب	To deceive	Dhoka dēnā	دھوکہ دینا
Ahead (adv.)	Āgē	آگے	Money	Rāqm	رقم

1. How much gram is given to the horse? 2. This table will be sent to your shop. 3. The matting of the room was changed last month. 4. The enemy was seen on the hill. 5. All the waste paper is thrown in the river. 6. If you make a noise again, you will be sent to the guard room. 7. One hundred men were sent there to clear the road. 8. When and where was the goat tied. 9. Are any tigers seen here? 10. The servants had been sent ahead to prepare dinner. 11. The effects of the soldier will be sold, and the money will be sent to his wife. 12. The old mares will be shot tomorrow.

The direct and Indirect Narrations

In English, there are two ways of repeating what somebody else had said; e.g.,

- (1) The Direct Narration, when we use the speaker's actual words.
- (2) The Indirect Narration, in which we repeat, what he said, in our own words.

In Urdu the Indirect Narration is uncommon and is confined to

commands. It is much simpler always to use the speaker's actual words, preceded by "keh" کہ *Inverted commas are not used in Urdu.*

The following examples will make this clear:—

Indirect: — John told me that he would go to Chittagong.

جان نے مجھ سے کہا کہ میں چٹاگانگ کو جاؤں گا

Direct: — John said to me, "I (John) will go to Chittagong.

John nē mujh sē kahā keh maiñ (John) Chatgāon ko jāūngā.

Indirect: — He asked me if my servant was in the room.

اس نے مجھ سے پوچھا کہ تمہارا نوکر کمرے میں ہے؟

Direct: — He asked me, "Is your servant in the room?"

Us nē mujh sē pūchhā keh kia tumhārā naukar kamrē mēñ hai?

Indirect: — The Colonel ordered him to open his box.

کرنل صاحب نے حکم دیا کہ اپنا صندوق کھولو

Direct: — The Colonel ordered him, "Open your box."

Karnēl sāheb nē usko hukm diā keh apnā sandūq kholo.

Indirect: — He asked me if I was a teacher.

Direct: — He asked me, "Are you a teacher?"

Us nē mujh sē pūchhā keh kiā āp Ustād haiñ?

اس نے مجھ سے پوچھا کہ کیا آپ استاد ہیں؟

EXERCISE 34(A)

Saudagar	Merchant	سوداگر	Batānā	To let know	بتانا
Zewar	Ornaments	زیور	Zarur	Without fail	ضرور

1. Us nē mujh sē pūchhā keh tum kahāñ rahtē ho? 2. Majīd sāheb nē mujh sē pūchhā keh tum is ādmī ko jāntē ho? 3. Bālīwālā sāheb nē darzī sē kahā keh maiñ das bajē daftar ko aūngā. 4. Syed sāheb nē sipāhī sē pūchhā keh tum kab sē is ghar mēñ rahtē ho? 5. Saudāgar nē mujh sē pūchhā keh tum nē yeh ghofā kab kharīdā hai? 6. Tum sē pūchhā jāēgā keh yeh ghar kis

kē hukm sē banāyā gayā hai? 7. Mērē pās zarūr āo. 8. Dākūoñ nē ghar kē andar jā kar aurat sē pūchhā keh tumhārā zēwar kahāñ hai, aur yeh bhī kahā keh agar tum nahīñ batāogī to ham tumhārī bach-chī ko mār dālēñgē.

EXERCISE 34(B)

Marriage	Shādī	شادی	To marry	Shādī karnā	شادی کرنا
----------	-------	------	----------	-------------	-----------

1. He told me that he had fallen from the horse. 2. I asked him why he had come to me. 3. I told the man that I would give him ten rupees a month. 4. The tailor says that you did not go to him. 5. He told me that he had come to my bungalow to see his brother. 6. The coolies asked me how much I had given to their head? 7. He told me that his servant would take me to the post office next morning. 8. The tailor told the butcher that he would take his money from him then and there. 9. Tell me what you read, and I will tell you what sort of man you are. 10. He told me that he was going to get married the following day. 11. She said to me that she did not know I was a farmer (Kisan)

Indirect Command

When an order is given indirectly (i.e., through a servant or some other person), the word “keh” (—that) is used after *kaho* or *bolo* (tell) or *hukm do* (order) etc. to introduce the actual command, and instead of the Imperative, we have the Aorist Tense (see page 95) of the Verb, agreeing in Number with the person or persons to whom the order is to be conveyed.

EXAMPLES

1. Tell the barber to wait.
Tell the barber that (he) may wait.
Haj-jām sē kaho keh thairē.
2. Tell the boys to come here.
Tell the boys that (they) may come here.
Laṛkoñ sē kaho keh woh yahāñ āēñ.

تجام سے کہو کہ ٹھہرے

لڑکوں سے کہو کہ وہ یہاں آئیں

3. Order the syce to get the carriage ready.

Saīs ko hukm do keh gāfī taiyār karē.

سائیس کو حکم دو کہ گاڑی تیار کرے

4. Tell the men to cut this grass.

Ādmīoñ sē kaho keh yeh ghāñs kāṭēñ

آدمیوں سے کہو کہ یہ گھانس کاٹیں

EXERCISE 35(A)

Dawā f.	Medicine	دوا	Balke	But	بلکہ
---------	----------	-----	-------	-----	------

1. Us sē kaho keh mujh ko rāstē mēñ nahīñ rokē. 2. Laṛkē sē kaho keh chīṭ-ṭhī apnē Sāheb kē pas lējāē. 3. Chaukidār sē kaho keh rāt ko nahīñ soē. 4. Dhobī sē kaho keh hamārē kapṭē jaldī wāpas lāē. 5. Darzī sē kaho keh hamārī qamīṣēñ jaldī taiyār karē. 6. Chaukidār sē kaho, keh agar yeh ādmī rāt ko hamārē bañglē mēñ aē, to is ko nahīñ rokē. 7. Taxī wālē sē kaho, keh abhī taxī lējāē, aur das bajē wāpas lāē. 8. Mērē naukarōñ ko samjhāo keh mujh sē Angrēzī kabhī nahīñ bolēñ balke hamēsha Urdu mēñ bāt karēñ. 9. Agar khidmatgār bīmār hai, to us sē kaho keh dāḳṭar sāheb kē pās jā kar dawā lāē. 10. Agar tum mērē naukar ko rāstē mēñ dēkho, to us sē kaho keh jaldī mērē pās aē. 11. Sab naukarōñ kī bīwīoñ sē kaho keh rāt ko na to gāēñ, aur na apnē bach-choñ ko mārēñ. 12. Laṛkoñ sē kaho keh kūēñ mēñ pat-thar nahīñ phēñkēñ. 13. Sāīs sē kaho keh is chīṭ-ṭhī kā jawāb mērē pās klab ko lāē. 14. Us sē kaho keh apnē sāheb ko hamārā salām dē. 15. Mālī sē kaho keh bahut bātēñ na banāē aur jaisā hukm dīā gayā hai waisā karē.

EXERCISE 35(B)

Signature	Dast-khat	دستخط	To sign	Dast-khat karnā	دستخط کرنا
Account	Hisāb	حساب	Hair	Bāl	بال
Carefully	Hūshyārī sē	ہوشیاری سے	Cleverly	Hūshyārī sē	ہوشیاری سے

1. Tell him to open the box. 2. Tell the boy not to play on the verandah.

3. Tell the chaukidar to wake me up at 5 O'clock. 4. Tell the sweeper to bring the dog's food. 5. Tell them to come here tomorrow. 6. Tell the servant not to make a noise. 7. Tell the tailor to bring my clothes. 8. Tell the barber to cut my hair after dinner. 9. Tell the washerman to wash this shirt very carefully. 10. Call the servant and tell him to go and tell the barber not to come to me to day. 11. Tell this man not to show me his face again. 13. Tell the babu to bring the papers for signature. 14. Tell the chaprasi to call his saheb to the phone. 15. Tell him to go away now, and come back some other time. 16. Ask the saheb to sign the receipt, and send it back to me by post.

Participle Adjectives

The Present and Past Participles are commonly used as Adjectives to show the state or *condition* of the Noun before which they are used; as,

<i>Present Participles</i>	<i>Past Participles</i>
The <i>moving</i> train.	The <i>dead</i> horse.
The <i>dying</i> boy.	The <i>broken</i> table.

In the above examples “moving” and “dying” are Participles used as Adjectives, to show the state or condition of the “train” and the “boy” respectively.

In such cases “hūā” the Past Participle of the Verb “hona”-(to be), is added to the Present or Past Participles, as the case may be, to form the *Participle Adjectives*; as,

<i>Present Participles</i>	<i>Past Participles</i>
Moving Chaltā huā چلتا ہوا	Dead Mara huā مرا ہوا
Dying Mārta huā مرتا ہوا	Broken Tūṭā huā ٹوٹا ہوا

EXAMPLES

1. The moving train	Chaltī hūī gāfī	چلتی ہوئی گاڑی
2. From the sleeping man	Sotē hūē ādmī sē	سوتے ہوئے آدمی سے
3. The dying boys	Martē hūē lafkē	مرتے ہوئے لڑکے
4. The dead horse	Marā hūā ghoṛā	مرا ہوا گھوڑا
5. In the broken cup	Tūṭē hūē pīālē mēñ	ٹوٹے ہوئے پیالے میں
6. The burnt girl	Jalī hūī lafkī	جلی ہوئی لڑکی
7. The dying boy gave me the address of his dead father written on a torn paper.	Martē hūē lafkē nē mujh ko apnē marē hūē bāp kā patā ēk phaṭē hūē kāghaz par likhā hūā dīā.	مرتے ہوئے لڑکے نے مجھ کو اپنے مرے ہوئے باپ کا پتر ایک پھٹے ہوئے کاغذ پر لکھا ہوا دیا

EXERCISE 36(A)

Dastūr	Custom	دستور	Bahādurī	Bravery	بہادری
Sabūt	Proof	ثبوت	Bāt	Matter, words	بات
Patta	Leaf	پتہ	Gawāhī	Evidence	گواہی
Kabūtar	Pigeon	کبوتر	Goli	Bullet	گولی
Kanjūs	Miser	کنجوس	Bhāgnā	To desert	بھاگنا
Pakafnā	To catch	پکڑنا	Dabnā	To be buried	دبنا
Dabānā	To bury	دبانا	Sūkhna	To be dried	سُکھنا
Jama k.	To collect	جمع کرنا	Safnā	To be tainted	سُڑنا
Barābar	Alike, equal	برابر	Khālī Adj.	Empty	خالی

1. Bahtā hūā pānī ach-*chhā* hotā hai. 2. Martē hūē dushman ko mārñā bahādurī nahīñ hai. 3. Tum nē jalī hūī roṭī khāī. 4. Sunī hūī bāt gawāhī kē liē kāfī sabūt nahīñ hai. 5. Bhāgā hūā sīpāhī apnē gaoñ mēñ *chhupā* hūā pakfā gayā. 6. Soyā hūā aur marā hūā ādmī barābar hotā hai. 7. Pānī pītē

hūē jānwar par golī chalānē kā dastūr nahīn hai. 8. Taiyār kiē hūē kaprē tūtē hūē sandūq mēn mat rakho. 9. Unhoñ nē marī hūī ghofī ko jaṅgal mēn dabāyā. 10. Us nē uftē hūē kabūtarōñ ko mār dālā. 11. Choroñ nē sotē hūē ādmī ko rassī sē bāndhā. 12. Sab sūkhī hūī roṭiāñ uskī dukān ko wāpas bhējo. 13. Agar woh aurat dabā hūā khazāna na batātī to dākū uskē bachchē ko jaltī hūī āg mēn phēñktē. 14. Darakhtoñ kē girē hūē pat-tē ēk jaga jama kar kē jalāo. 15. Yeh botal bhārī hūī hai, yā Khālī hai? 16. Dūbī hūī kishtī mēn do tūṭī hūī gāṛiāñ bhī thīñ. 17. Tum yeh safā hūā gosht kiā karogē? 18. Kanjūs ādmī kē bēṭē nē apnē bāp kā jama kiā hūā sab rupīa thoṛē din mēn barbād kiā. 19. Chale hūē kārtūs, bharē hūē kārtūsōñ sē alag rakho.

EXERCISE 36(B)

Ship	Jahāz	جہاز	Crew	Jahāz kā Amla	جہاز کا عملہ
Beggar	Faqīr	فقیہ	Law	Qānūn	قانون
Cowardly <i>adj.</i>	Ḍarpok	درپوک	Cavalry	Risāla	رسالہ
Leg <i>f.</i>	Tāṅg	ٹانگ	Kettle <i>f.</i>	Kētlī	کیتلی
To be broken	Tūṭnā	ٹوٹنا	To jump	Kūd nā	کودنا
To fill	Bharnā	بھرنہ	To hurl	De mār nā	دے مارنا
To be boiling	Khaulnā	کھولنا	Unwritten	Unlikhā	ان لکھا
To be drowned	Dūbnā	ڈوبنا	To sink	Dūbnā	ڈوبنا

1. I went into the burning room to save the crying child. 2. He took off his burnt clothes. 3. The thief jumped from the moving train. 4. Two boats were sent to save the crew of the sinking ship. 5. Our cavalry attacked the retreating enemy. 6. I have seen it written somewhere. 7. The sentry stopped the running horse. 8. My cowardly servant would not go near the dead tiger. 9. They brought the drowned man to me. 10. The wounded soldier showed

me his broken leg. 1. He hurled the glass full of beer at the beggar's head. 12. Bring some boiling water in the kettle. 13. This is an unwritten law.

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 37(A)

(On Exercises from 30 to 36)

Words

Artillery	Top <u>khāna</u>	توپ خانہ	Hole, pit	Gaṛhā	گڑھا
Property	Māl; Milkīyat	مال ملکیت	Word	Lafz	لفظ
Generally	Aksar	اکثر	Fast (sleep)	Bē <u>khābar</u>	بے خبر
Whole (all)	Sab	سب	Whole (unbroken) Sābut		ثابت
To dig	Khodnā	کھودنا	Gun (cannon) Top		توپ
Line	Lāin f.	لائن	To stand	Khaṛā honā	کھڑا ہونا
To load	Bharnā	بھرنے	To drive back	Pīchhē haṭānā	پچھے ہٹانا
To post	Dāk mēñ dālnā	ڈاک میں ڈالنا	To make haste	Jaldī karnā	جلدی کرنا
To be torn			To count	Ginnā	گننا
To burst	Phaṭnā	پھٹنا			

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 37(A)

(On Exercises from 30 to 36)

1. Put an anna stamp on this letter and post it. 2. Bring the receipt with you tomorrow morning at eight. 3. Tell the boy to make haste. 4. Ask him if he has come to put the fan right. 5. He was asked to call at another time. 6. You forget to do everything, do you ever forget to have your food (bread)? 7. To steal is not a crime but to be caught is one. 8. The enemy was driven back with the help of the artillery. 9. The thieves dug a hole in the ground to bury the stolen property. 10. Giving is better than receiving. 11. The child

dropped the loaded gun, which went off at once. 12. Two guns were hidden behind the trees. 13. I taught him both reading and writing. 14. He was taught both reading and writing. 15. There is no pleasure in going so fast. 16. Did I make a mistake in counting the words? 17. You make ten mistakes in writing five lines. 18. Ask him if he has brought the bill. 19. Tell them to be quiet. 20. Although he was fast asleep, his eyes were open. 21. Home-made sweets are generally the most delicious. 22. As the pocket was torn, the rupee fell out somewhere. 23. Looking for the lost rupee along the road I reached my bungalow, where I saw it lying under a burnt paper. 24. You said, you did not know the dead man, how do you know that he is a runaway soldier? 25. When the shell burst the soldiers standing up were wounded, those lying down escaped. 26. Bring some hot water to wash my hands. 27. Is this cup broken or whole? 28. He abused my dead mother.

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 37(B)

- ۱۔ لڑکے نے آپ اپنی گھڑی توڑی ہے۔ ۲۔ غریب عورتیں اپنے گھر کا کام آپ کرتی ہیں۔ ۳۔ میرا سائیس آپ کے گھوڑے کے واسطے گھاس نہیں لائے گا۔ ۴۔ مولوی صاحب نے خود تم کو باغ میں دیکھا تھا۔ ۵۔ تم تیرنا جانتے ہو۔ ۶۔ بہادر آدمی مرنے اور مارنے سے نہیں ڈرتے ہیں۔ ۷۔ ہر وقت ہنسنا اور دانت نکالنا بہت خراب عادتیں ہیں۔ ۸۔ بات کرنا آسان ہے لیکن کام کرنا بڑا مشکل ہے۔ ۹۔ آپ کا نوکر آپ کو بلانے آیا ہے۔ ۱۰۔ تم یہاں سیکھنے کو آئے ہو یا سکھانے کو۔ ۱۱۔ یہ دو روپے تمہارے مٹھائی کھانے کے ہیں۔ ۱۲۔ خدا نے دن کا کام کرنے کو اور رات آرام کرنے کو بنائی ہے۔ ۱۳۔ تمہاری عرضی جج صاحب کے سامنے رکھی جائے گی۔ ۱۴۔ ڈاکوؤں نے گھر کے اندر جا کر عورت سے پوچھا کہ تمہارا زیور کہاں ہے اور یہ بھی کہا کہ اگر تم نہیں بتاؤ گی تو ہم تمہاری پیچی کو مار ڈالیں گے۔ ۱۵۔ مانی سے کہو کہ بہت باتیں نہ بنائے اور جیسا حکم دیا گیا ہے ویسا کرے۔

PART IV

This Part comprises those Verbs which follow particular rules when joined to, or used with, other Verbs in the same sentence.

The Verbs “Saknā” سکنّا and “Chuknā” چکنا

Saknā— To be able Are joined to the “root” of the
Chuknā— To finish Verb, whose action they govern.

EXAMPLES

1. To be able to write	Likh saknā	لکھ سکنّا
2. To be able to see	Dēkh saknā	دیکھ سکنّا
3. To have done writing	Likh chuknā	لکھ چکنا
4. To finish playing	Khēl chuknā	کھیل چکنا

Note :— The Verbs, “Saknā” and “Chuknā” are conjugated to show the required Tense, while the roots, to which they are added, undergo no change.

EXAMPLES

1. I am able to go there
(or) I can go there Maiñ wahāñ jā saktā hūñ.
2. She was not able to speak Arabic
or
She could not speak Arabic Woh Arbī nahīñ bol saktī thī.
3. We shall not be able to come to you tomorrow.
Ham kal tumhārē pās nahīñ a sakēñgē
4. Have you finished writing the mail?
Tum dāk (or khat) likh chukē ho?
5. The girls will finish playing presently.
Laḳiāñ thoī dēr mēñ khēl chukēñgī.

EXERCISE 38(A)

Marzī f.	Consent, willingness	مرضی
Andhērā	Dark	اندھیرا
Hargiz nahīñ	Never or under no circumstances	ہرگز نہیں

1. Maiñ āj tumhārē pās nahīñ ā saktā hūñ 2. Woh aisā mahñgā ghoṛā nahīñ kharīd saktā hai 3. Lafkī tumhārī marzī kē baghair tum ko chīṭ-ṭhī nahīñ bhēj saktī hai. 4. Ham yeh purānī chīzēñ Sāheb kē hukm kē baghair nahīñ bēch saktē haiñ. 5. Tum abhī do mahīnē tak chhuṭ-ṭī pār hargiz nahīñ jā sakogē. 6. Tum mat ḍaro, who tum ko nahīñ mār saktē haiñ. 7. Maiñ yeh kitāb paṭh chukā hūñ, ab tum isko (paṭhnē kē wāstē) lējā saktē ho. 8. Woh apnā ghofā bēch chukā hai, ab woh usko wāpas nahīñ lē saktā hai. 9. Khālīd sāheb sab kāghazoñ par daskhat kar chukē haiñ, ab shāyad woh apne bañgle ko jāēngē. 10. Agar auratēñ ghāñs kāt chukī haiñ, to un sē kaho keh woh ab jā saktī haiñ.

EXERCISE 38(B)

Experience Tajriba	تجربہ	Rain Bārish	بارش
--------------------	-------	-------------	------

1. My servant can go with you. 2. I could not come here yesterday on account of the rain. 3. I cannot send my servant to you everyday. 4. You cannot forget his name. 5. She cannot write Urdu. 6. We cannot read this letter. 7. Will you be able to play next week? 8. They will not be able to catch the thief in the dark. 9. I have finished writing my letters, now I can go with you. 10. Go and see if the men have finished eating. 11. Take this letter to the treasury, if you have finished cleaning the room. 12. The girl has finished making the tea. 13. Only experience can teach you this. 14. No one can do two things at the same time.

CHĀHNĀ (چاہنا)

The Verb “CHĀHNĀ” — To wish, to want, etc.

In English the Verb “to wish” is used within an Infinitive and in the same way “*Chāhnā*” takes the infinitive *before it* in Urdu; as,

To wish to eat	Khānā chāhnā	کھانا چاہنا
To wish to go	Jānā chāhnā	جانا چاہنا
To wish to see	Dēkhnā chāhnā	دیکھنا چاہنا

1. I wish to play this evening.
Maiñ āj shām ko khēlnā chāhtā hūñ.
میں آج شام کو کھیلنا چاہتا ہوں
2. She wishes to go to the dance.
Woh nāch mēñ jānā chāhtī hai.
وہ ناچ میں جانا چاہتی ہے
3. They were not desirous of waiting.
Woh thairnā nahīñ chāhtē thē.
وہ ٹھہرنا نہیں چاہتے تھے۔
4. He will not want to sleep here.
Woh yahāñ sonā nahīñ chāhēgā.
وہ یہاں سونا نہیں چاہے گا
5. Do you want to buy this tractor?
Tum yeh tractor kharīdnā chāhtē ho?
تم یہ ٹریکٹر خریدنا چاہتے ہو؟

EXERCISE 39(A)

Fauj f.	Army	فوج	Aksar Adj.	Most	اکثر
Hazār	Thousand	ہزار	Aksar Adv.	Often	اکثر

1. Maiñ apnī bīwī kē pās tār bhējnā chāhtā hūñ. 2. Woh aglē haftē

shikār ko jānā chāhtā hai. 3. Uskī bēṭī hoṭal mēñ rahnā nahīñ chāhtī hai. 4. Ham do hazār rupai qarz lēnā chāhtē haiñ. 5. Woh apnē nām Pākistānī palṭan kē wāstē dēnā chāhtē haiñ. 6. Woh lafkā apnā khat kisī ko dikhānā nahīñ chāhtā hai. 7. Sab naukar tamāsha dēkhne ko jānā chāhēñgē. 8. Apnē shahr jānā kaun chāhtā hai? 9. Woh aisē badmāsh haiñ kēh tumhārē kapṛē bhī utārnē chāhēñgē. 10. Dushman kā jāsūs apnī fauj ko hamārā risālē kē ānē kī khabar dēnā chāhtā hai. 11. Āj kal har ēk ādmī motar chalānā sīkhnā chāhtā hai. 12. Hamārē ādmī bahut sawērē rawāna honā chāhtē thē. 13. Tum is bāt ko chhupānā kioñ chāhtē ho? 14. Woh apnī rasīdēñ wāpas lēnā chāhēñgā. 15. Aksar naukar apnē sāheb kē sāth apnē shahr sē bāhar jānā nahīñ chāhtē haiñ. 16. Agar tum chhuṭ-ṭī par jānā chāhtē ho, to kām karnē kē wāstē dūsra ādmī lāo.

EXERCISE 39(B)

Country	Mulk	ملک	Contract	Thēka	بھیکہ
Else; more	Aur	اور	Peace	Sulah	صلح
Alive	Zinda	زندہ	To capture	Pakaṛnā	پکڑنا
To pay	Adā karnā	ادا کرنا	Front (war)	Lafāī, maidān-e-jañg	لڑائی/ میدان جنگ

1. I wish to go to the front to fight for my country. 2. I do not want to see your face again. 3. The thief wished to escape. 4. The woman wishes to go by the mail train. 5. The enemy wishes to make peace. 6. They will not want to come here again. 7. Do you want to take all these contracts? 8. Do you wish to deceive me? 9. Why does he want to see me? 10. Why do you want to know that? 11. We wished to capture the spy alive. 12. I would like to have a talk with you. 13. My father wishes to take my servants with him to Kashmir. 14. I wish to pay off my debts this month. 15. I want to ask you once more. 16. What else do they want?

CHĀHIĒ

(چاہیے)

“Chāhiē” is the respectful Imperative of “Chahna” and is used in the sense of *should* and *ought* and also *must* in a mild sense.

“Chāhīē” takes its subject in the dative case, (e.g. *ko* is used after the subject) and the Principal Verb in the Infinitive; as

EXAMPLES

1. I should go (or) It is upon me to go.

(To me, to go, should) — Mujh ko jānā chāhīē.

مجھ کو جانا چاہیے

2. The men should not have come here.

Ādmīn ko yahāñ nahīñ ānā chāhīē thā.

آدمیوں کو یہاں نہیں آنا چاہیے تھا

Observation:— If the accompanying Verb is transitive and has an object, the idiom differs at Lucknow and Delhi. (Vide note on next page).

At Lucknow the “Infinitive coupled with the direct object” is treated as a compound Verb, and hence the infinitive is never inflected. The Plural Form *chahien* is never used at Lucknow, and is rather detested.

Delhi people make the Infinitive agree with the object in Gender and Number, and use the Plural Form *chahien* to agree with the object in Number.

EXAMPLES

1. The man should bring three horses.

Ādmī ko tīñ ghoṛē lānā chāhīē. (Lucknow)

Ādmī ko tīñ ghoṛē lānē chāhīēñ (Delhi).

2. You should sell this mare.

Tum ko yeh ghoṛī bēchnā chāhīē. (Lucknow)

Tum ko yeh ghoṛī bēchnī chāhīē. (Delhi)

3. I should learn several languages

Mujh ko kāī zabānēñ sīkhnā chāhīē. (Lucknow)

Mujh ko kāī zabānēñ sīkhnī chāhīēñ. (Delhi)

Note :— In the Past Tense “chāhīē” is followed by the past auxiliaries e.g. “thā, thē or thī” etc.; as,

4. He ought to have bought two locks.
 Unko do tālē kharīdnā chāhīē thē. (Lucknow)
 Unko do tālē kharīdnē chāhīēñ thē. (Delhi)
- They ought to have seen the carriage
 Unko gārī dēkhnā chāhīē thī. (Lucknow)
 Unko gārī dēkhñī chāhīē thī. (Delhi).

* There is another construction which is everywhere the same. In it chāhīē followed by “keh” starts the sentence, and the principal Verb is put in the Aorist, which agrees in number with the subject (and not with the object); as,

1. I should go.
 It is necessary that I should go (may go).
 Chāhīē keh main jāūñ.
2. The boys should come here.
 Chāhīē keh laṛkē yahāñ āēñ.

Note :— In the Past Tense “Chāhīē thā” is followed by the Past Conditional, as,

1. I should have gone there.
 Chāhīē thā keh main wahāñ jātā.
2. You should have shown the mare to me.
 Chāhīē thā keh tum ghōṛī mujh ko dikhātē.

Note :— *The different constructions about the use of “Chāhīē” are given above. The student may choose whichever idiom he thinks convenient to adopt. If he knows the other two he will be quite at ease when he comes across them in writing or speech.

EXERCISE 40(A)

1. Mujh ko us kē sāth rahnā nahīñ chāhīē.
2. Us ko apnē dost kē sāth

aisā salūk karnā nahīn chāhīē. 3. Tum ko apnī chīzēn sandūq mēn rakh kar tālā lagānā chāhīē. 4. Ham ko naukar kē sāth mazāq nahīn karnā chāhīē. 5. Shahr kē logoñ ko āpas mēn hargiz nahīn lafnā chāhīē. 6. Tum ko kisī dūsrē ādmī kā khat hargiz nahīn paṛhnā chāhīē. 7. Tum ko apnē paṛausioñ ko nāhaq nuqsān pahuñhcnā nahīn chāhīē. 8. Sab ādmioñ ko apnē kām par waqt sē pāñch minit pahlē pahuñchnā chāhīē. 9. Tum ko apnā kām bahut hūshyārī sē karnā chāhīē. 10. Aurtoñ ko āj kal rāt ko nau bajē kē bād bāzār mēn nikalnā nahīn chāhīē. 11. Uskī bēṭioñ ko naukarōñ kī bīwioñ sē lafnā nahīn chāhīē. 12. Bāwarchī ko mailā pānī rāstē mēn nahīn phēñknā chāhīē thā. 13. Sipāhī ko aisī chuṭ-ṭhī apnē afsar ko nahīn likhnī chāhīē. 14. Aqlmand ādmī ko āj kā kām kal par nahīn chhofnā chāhīē. 15. Chāhīē thā keh tum jūṭī hūī botal kē tukṭē farsh par nahīn rahnē dētē.

EXERCISE 40(B)

1. You should not come inside the office. 2. They should not make a noise. 3. What should we do then? 4. The chowkidar should not sleep at night. 5. What a fool, you must have patience. 6. The girls should not read such books. 7. You should not show your mistake to the people. 8. The man should not spread false rumours in the bazaar. 9. The papers should not be burnt near the grass. 10. All the recruits should clean their rifles everyday. 11. You should not steal Government property. 12. We ought not to have killed the peacocks. 13. They should not have cut these green trees.

“PAṚNĀ” (پارنا) AND “HON Ā” (هونا)

The Verb “Paṛnā” and “Hon ā” are added to the Infinitive to give sense of “Must”, “to have to” etc. They also require their subject in the dative, and follow exactly the same rules as “chāhīē” regarding the agreement of the Infinitive with the object.

“Paṛnā” پارنا is used to show absolute compulsion or to have to do anything against one’s convenience, per force, or when there is no alternative.

“Hon ā” هونا is used to show when a thing is decided upon or arranged, supposed to be done or is advisable.

In short

Paṛna shows that a thing *has* to be done.

Hona shows that a thing *is* to be done; as,

1. I was to go there yesterday.
Mujh ko kal wahāñ jānā thā.
2. I had to go there yesterday.
Mujh ko kal wahāñ jānā paṛā.
3. The thief had to confess his crime.
Chor ko apnā jurm mānnā paṛā. (No alternative)
4. The woman will have to go.
Aurat ko jānā hogā. (arranged)
Aurat ko jānā paṛēgā. (must)
5. I have to buy a good mare.
Mujh ko ēk ach-chhī ghōṛī kharīdnā hai. (Lucknow)
Mujh ko ēk ach-chhī ghōṛī kharīdnī hai. (Delhi)
6. I have to see the horses everyday.
Mujh ko har roz ghōṛē dēkhnā hotē haiñ. (arranged)
Mujh ko har roz ghōṛē dēkhnā paṛtē haiñ. (must)
Mujh ko har roz ghōṛē dēkhnē paṛtē haiñ (Delhi)
7. You will have to give him his pay.
Tum ko uskī tankhwāh dēnā hogī (decision)
Tum ko uskī tankhwāh dēnā paṛēgī (must)
Tum ko uskī tankhwāh dēnī paṛēgī (Delhi)

EXERCISE 41(A)

1. Tum ko yeh kharāb dānā wāpas lēnā paṛēgā, aur iski qīmat wāpas dēnī paṛēgī. 2. Tum ko uskē sāth kām karnā paṛēgā. 3. Sāñpoñ kē sabab ham ko yeh bañgla chhoṛnā paṛēgā. 4. Maiñ yahāñ ēk din kē wāstē āyā thā, lēkin shāyad mujh ko tīn din tak thairnā paṛēgā. 5. Tum ko mērē sāth laṛāī par chalnā paṛēgā. 6. Mujh ko kuchh chīzēñ kharīdnē bāzār jānā hai. 7. Tum ko palāñ kē sāth laṛāī par jānā hogā. 8. Apnē dost ko sazā sē bachānē kē wāstē mujh ko jhūt bolnā paṛēgā, lēkin maiñ jhūt bolnā nahīñ chāhtā hūñ. 9. General sāheb ko daurē par jānā hai. 10. Agar tum ko jānā hai to jāo; maiñ tum ko rok nahīñ saktā hūñ. 11. Tum ko kia khabar keh ham ko laṛāī par kiā kiā dēkhnā paṛtā hai.

EXERCISE 41(B)

1. Every child in India has got to go to school. 2. I have to go to see my friend. 3. He had to wait there for orders. 4. Thou *shalt* not steal. 5. They had to take off their clothes for the medical inspection. 6. The soldiers are to obey their officers' orders. 7. You will have to buy warm clothes yourself. 8. You will have to put all these things in the sun at least once a week. 9. I have to send these boxes to Delhi by passenger train. 10. Bearer, you should stay on the verandah, for if you are not there, I have to come out of the room to call you. 11. He has to spend two hundred rupees a month.

The Verb "MILNĀ" (ملنا)

The Verb "Milnā" ملنا, stands for several English Verbs such as, to get, to find, to receive, to obtain, to meet and to come across, etc. etc.

The construction is the reverse of that used in English, the subject being in the Dative and the object, with which the Verb agrees in gender and number, in the Nominative case.

EXAMPLES

1. I received a letter.

(By me a letter was received)—Mujh ko ēk chit-ṭhī milī.

مجھ کو ایک چٹھی ملی

2. The man got two horses — Ādmī ko do ghofē milē.

آدمی کو دو گھوڑے ملے

3. She will get a reward — Us ko inām milēgā.

اس کو انعام ملے گا

4. Did you find all the things correct?

Kiā tum ko sab chīzēn thīk milīn?

کیا تم کو سب چیزیں ٹھیک ملیں

5. You cannot get more than two days' leave.

Tum ko do din sē ziāda kī chhuṭ-ṭī nahīn mil saktī.

تم کو دو دن سے زیادہ کی چھٹی نہیں مل سکتی

EXERCISE 42(A)

Dūdh	Milk	دودھ	Kinārā	Bank, shore	کنارا
Pās	Pass	پاس	Ziāda	More (Adj.)	زیادہ
Wardī	Uniform	وردی	Jhāfī	Bush	جھاڑی
Qismat	Luck	قسمت	Kam	Less	کم

1. Ham ko yahān bahut ach-*chhā* dūdh nahīn miltā hai. 2. Pahlā inām sab sē bahādur ādmī ko milēgā. 3. Aglē mahīnē mēn sipāhīon ko naī wardīān milēngī. 4. Tum ko mērī jēb mēn sē koī *chhoṭī* kitāb milī hai? 5. Mērē bēṭē ko yeh andē jhāfī mēn milē thē. 6. Āj kal laṭāī kē sabab wilāyatī chīzēn nahīn mil saktī hai. 7. Tum ko mērā pata kaisē milā? 8. Mērē naukar ko āj chār bajē kē bād khānā milā hai. 9. Sāheb ko zīn pul kē nīchē paṭī hūī milī. 10. Tumhārē bhāī ko daftar sē kiā miltā hai? 11. Ham ko rāstē mēn bahut ādmī auratēn aur bach-*chē* milē jo shahr ko chīzēn *kharīdnē* kē wāstē jā rahē thē. 12. Jo kuchh tumhārī qismat mēn likhā hūā hai tum ko us sē ziāda nahīn mil saktā. 13. Qile kē andar jānē kā pās nahīn miltā hai? 14. Hoṭal mēn bahut sāheb hai, ham ko kamrē nahīn mil sakēngē. 15. Tum ko

arzi kā kuchh jawāb milā? 16. Yeh laḥkē mujh ko bāgh meḥ ghāḥs par lēṭē hūē milē. 17. Dhobī kī bēṭiōḥ ko yeh laḥkī daryā kē kinārē kē pās rotī hūī milī.

EXERCISE 42(B)

Medal	Tamgha	تمغہ	Cross-road	Chaurāhā	چوراہا
Bunch	Guch- <i>chhā</i>	گچھا	Hard work	Mehnat	مہنت
No body	Koī nahīn	کوئی نہیں	Almirah	Almārī	الماری
Frontier	Sarhad	سرحد	Jew, Jewess	Yahūdī, yahūdan	یہودی / یہودین

1. The brave soldier received a medal in the last war. 2. I found this bunch of keys lying near the Jew's house. 3. When did you receive my letter? 4. Did you find the mistake in your account? 5. The regiment got an order to go to the Frontier at once. 6. If you work properly, you will get a reward. 7. My servant could not find the teacher's house. 8. How much do you get in a month? 9. I shall not get such a good servant again. 10. The police found all the things hidden behind the almirah in the shop. 11. These men cannot get the contract now. 12. Nothing is obtained in the world without hard work. 13. You will find nobody here to day. 14. If you meet my servant on the way, please tell him I have found the watch, and that he should come to me at once.

LAGNĀ	PĀNĀ	لگنا / پانا	AND DĒNĀ	دینا
Lagnā	To begin	لگنا	Take the inflected form	
Pānā	To be allowed:	پانا	of the accompanying	
Dēnā	To allow; to let	دینا	Infinitive.	

Note :— The word "ij āzat" (permission) is understood with "d ēnā" and "p ānā".

1.	To begin to eat	Khānē lagnā	کھانے لگنا
2.	To be allowed to go	Jānē pānā	جانے پانا
3.	To allow to sleep	Sonē dēnā	سونے دینا

4. He began to open the box.
Woh sandūq kholnē lagā.
5. I have begun to understand now.
Maiñ ab samajhnē lagā hūñ.
6. You will begin to speak Urdu in two months.
Tum do mahinē mēñ Urdu bolnē lagogē.
7. He will not be allowed to keep a rifle.
Woh rāifal rakhnē nahīñ pāēgā.
8. We are not allowed to go there.
Ham wahāñ jānē nahīñ pātē haiñ.
9. Let him bring the horse here.
Usko ghoṛā yahāñ lānē do.

Note:— It must be remembered that "Dāñā", being a Transitive Verb, requires the use of "nē" with the subject in the past tense.

10. Mr. Mirza did not allow him to buy the horse.
Mirzā sāheb nē usko ghoṛā nahīñ Kharīdnē diā.
11. He did not let me read the letter.
Us nē mujh ko chīṭ-ṭhī nahīñ pāṛhnē di.

EXERCISE 43(A)

Kawwā	Crow	کوا	Thēkēdār	Contractor	ٹھیکیدار
Murghī	Hen	مرغی	Waghaira	Etcetera	دیگرہ
Ke siwāē	Except	کے سوا ہے	Māñ bāp	Parents	ماں باپ
				(māñ - mother; bāp - father)	

1. Woh ab Urdu samajhnē lagā hai. 2. Jab woh laṛkī apnē khāwind kē ghar jānē lagī to us kē māñ bāp muskurānē lagē. 3. Jab mērī gāfī chalnē

lagēgī to kuttā bhauṅknē lagēgā. 4. Maiñ apnē palaṅg par lēṭ kar ēk kitāb paṛhnē lagā. 5. Ab tum itnā jhūṭ kioñ bolnē lagē ho? 6. Yeh bach-cha shāyad do tīn mahīnē mēñ chalnē lagēgā. 7. Yeh sust ādmī mujh ko dēkh kar kām karnē lagtē haiñ. 8. Jab kawwē koī sāñp dēkhtē haiñ to bahut chil-lānē aur shor karnē lagtē haiñ. 9. Maiñ tum ko un ādmīoñ kē pās nahīñ jānē dūṅgā, agar tum jāogē to unko ghar mēñ nahīñ pāogē. 10. Tum mujh ko sonē kioñ nahīñ dētē ho? 11. Mērē hukm kē baghair kisī ādmī ko yahāñ mat rahnē do. 12. Naukar baṅglē mēñ bakrī aur murghī waghaira nahīñ rakhnē pāēṅgē. 13. Chaprāsī inām kē baghair thēkēdār ko sāheb kē sāmnē nahīñ jānē degā. 14. Woh apnē dostoñ ko chiṭ-ṭhīāñ bhējnē nahīñ pāēgā. 15. Afsaroñ kē siwāē koī ādmī is jaṅgal mēñ shikār khēlnē nahīñ pātā hai 16. Do haftē tak kisī ādmī ko is kūēñ sē pānī mat lēnē do.

EXERCISE 43(B)

Villager	Gāoñ wālā گاؤں والا	Sweeper	Mehtar; bhaṅgī مہتر بھنگی
Peacock	Mor; mornī مور/مورنی	Properly	Ṭhīk ṭhīk (adv.) ٹھیک ٹھیک
To abuse	Gālī dēnā گالی دینا	To touch	Chhūnā چھونا
To take in	Bēwaqūf banānā بیوقوف بنانا		
To let go, to allow to go	Jānē dēnā جانے دینا	To let go (release)	Chhoṛnā چھوڑنا

1. When I go to him for pay, he begins to abuse me. 2. She begins to read very early. 3. Having seen him, all the women began to laugh. 4. The servants have begun to take me in. 5. When will you begin to work properly? 6. He is not allowed to walk about. 7. We are not allowed to leave the office before 2 o'clock. 8. Let the officer go to bazaar to buy some things. 9. Let the dog go. 10. He was allowed to sleep in the office. 11. They will be allowed to see their friends. 12. Do not let the sweeper touch my things. 13. The dog will not let any man come near the room. 14. The villagers did not allow us to shoot peacocks. 15. The doctor allowed him to eat meat. 16. I cannot allow you to open his letter.

The Habitual Tense

The Habitual Tense shows that the action is done regularly, habitually as a rule: as, He used to go.

In Urdu, the Habitual Tense is formed by adding the verb “karnā” (to do), to the *Past Participle* of the Verb. The Past Participle always remains unchanged, while the Verb “karnā” is conjugated to show the required tense; as,

To be in the habit of sleeping	Soyā karnā	سو یا کرنا
To be accustomed to walk	Chalā karnā	چلا کرنا
To be in the habit of going	Jāyā* karnā (not gayā karnā)	جایا کرنا

- * The Verb jana takes its regular Past Participle “jāyā” (and not gayā) before “karnā”

EXAMPLES

- I am in the habit of rising very early.
Main bahut sawērē uṭhā kartā hūn.
- I used to buy everything from his shop.
Main har chīz uskī dūkān sē kharīdā kartā thā.
- Make it a habit to give the horse some salt every day.
Ghoṛē ko har roz namak diā karo.
- A mare used to graze in the jungle.
Ek ghoṛī jaṅgal mēn charā kartī thī.
- What time will you come to me every day?
Tum har roz kis waqt mērē pās āyā karogē?

Note :— Sometimes in Urdu, as in English, the Present Indefinite and Past Imperfect Tenses are used as habitual tenses; as

6. Ahmad talks too much, but works very little.

Ahmad bāt bahut ziāda kartā hai, lēkin kām bahut thoḡā kartā hai.

7. Waheed and Rafi were always laughing at him.

Waheed aur Rafi us par hamēsha hañstē thē.

EXERCISE 44(A)

Nāshta	Breakfast	ناشتہ	Darja	Class	درجہ
Guldasta	Bouquet	گلدستہ	Gadhā	Ass	گدھا
Rīwālwar	Revolver	ریوالور	Safar karnā	To travel	سفر کرنا
Dhonā	To wash	دھونا	Dakhl dēnā	To meddle	دخل دینا
Sinā	To sew	سینا			

1. Hindū gosht nahīn khāyā kartē haiñ. 2. Qilē kā darzī mērē kapṭē sīā kartā hai. 3. Qasāī har roz shām ko aglē din kē wāstē hukm lēnē āyā kartā hai. 4. Sipāhī har sāl chhuṭ-ṭī pār apnē gharoñ ko jāyā kartē haiñ. 5. Tum nāshta kis waqt kartē ho? 6. Uskī bīwī har roz shām ko klab jā kar ṭenis khēlā kartī hai. 7. Daftar kē darwāzē kaun kholtā hai? 8. Jab main khēl kar wāpas ātā hūñ, to ghul kiā kartā hūñ. 9. Tum apnā qasūr hamēsha dūsre naukaroñ par rakhtē ho. 10. Paṭhān bahut bahādurī sē laḡā kartē haiñ. 11. Main apnē takyē kē nīchē rīwālwar rakh kar soyā kartā hūñ. 12. Jab do pahr hotī hai to dhobī kī bīwī uskē liē khānā lāyā kartī hai. 13. Tumhārē kapṭē kaunsā dhobī dhoyā kartā hai. 14. Mālī har roz mērē wāstē do guldastē lāyā kartā thā. 15. Kiā kābul mēñ gadhē nahīn hūā kartē haiñ? 16. Woh bēwaqūf ādmī hamēsha dūsroñ kī bāt mēñ dakhl diā kartā hai. 17. Tum sharāb piā kartē ho.

EXERCISE 44(B)

Compound	Ehāta	احاطہ	Fair	Mēla	میلہ
To take an exercise	Warzish karnā	ورزش کرنا			

1. This man used to bring my mail from the post office. 2. My servant's children used to make a great noise in the compound. 3. Do not accustom yourself to telling lies. 4. Ask them why they always laugh at me? 5. A tiger used to carry away men and women who were returning after dark from the city. 6. The wives and the daughters of the servants used to sing at night. 7. I am in the habit of taking a bath twice daily. 8. In future all the receipts will be sent to the treasury. 9. A large fair used to take place there every year. 10. Why are you always joking with my old servant? 11. Two men used to live in the same house, and used to drink wine and fight a good deal with each other. 12. The wicked man, who used to steal horses, has been caught. 13. I shall make it a habit to take some exercise every evening.

The Continual Tense

The Continual Tense is expressed in the following two ways:—

(i) The Verb “rahnā” (to remain) is joined to the *Present Participle* of any other Verb. The Present Participle changes its final “a” into “e” or “ī” according to the Number and Gender of the subject; as,

To keep on writing	Likhtē rahnā.
He kept on writing	Woh likhtā rahā.
She keeps on writing	Woh likhtī rahī hai.
We shall keep on writing	Ham likhtē rahēngē.
The girls shall keep on writing	Lāḳiāñ likhtī rahēngī.

(2) The Verb “jānā” (to go on) is added to the *Inflected Past Participle* of the Verb. The Past Participle is always in the inflected form and never changes; as,

To keep on writing	Likhē jānā.
He kept on writing	Woh likhē gāyā.

She keeps on writing	Woh likhē jāti hai.
We shall keep on writing	Ham likhē jāēngē.
You keep on writing (<i>Present</i>)	Tum likhē jātē ho.
You keep on writing (<i>Command</i>)	Tum likhē jāo.

Note:— The two constructions have not, strictly speaking, precisely the same meaning. “Rahnā” expresses merely continuity of action; “jānā”, on the other hand, is used when the action is continued inspite of some possible cause of interruption. Thus “she goes on writing all day long” would be “rahn ā”, but “when I entered the room he kept on with his work”, would be “j ānā”

EXERCISE 45(A)

Vakīl	Pleader	وکیل	Sūrākh; chhēd	Hole	سوراخ / چھید
Koshish	Effort	کوشش	Mana karnā	To forbid	منع کرنا
Paḥausī	Neighbour	پڑوسی	Pāgal	Mad	پاگل
Kāmyāb	Successful	کامیاب	Din bhar	All day	دن بھر
Chupkā	Quietly	چپکا	Barābar	Continually	برابر
Paḥaus	Neighbourhood	پڑوس	Musibat	Mishap, trouble	مصیبت

1. Paḥān sarhad par hamēsha taiyār rahtē hain. 2. Tumhārā bēṭā mērē bēṭē kē sāth bahut dēr tak khēltā rahā. 3. Hamārā vakīl jaj sāheb kē sāmne do ghanṭē tak barābar boltā rahā. 4. Chor ēk ghanṭē tak dīwār mēñ sūrākh kartē rahē. 5. Naukarōñ kī bīwīāñ kal subah sē shām tak laṭī rahīñ. 6. Agar tum laṭkoñ ko mana nahīñ karogē, to woh yahāñ din bhar shor kartē rahēngē. 7. Maiñ khūb jāntā hūñ keh aur sab ādmī kām kartē rahēngē lēkin tum sotē rahogē. 8. Kabhī kabhī woh gharīb aurat bahut dēr tak roē jāti hai. 9. Agar tum paḥausiōñ kī murghīāñ churā kar khāē jāogē to tum ko bahut sakht saza

milēgi. 10. Hamārā naukār pāgal ādmī kī tarah hañsē jāta hai. 11. Agar tum koshish kīē jāogē to ēk din zarūr kāmyāb hojāogē. 12. Maiñ apnē buddhē naukār ko abhī tak tīs rupai mahīna diē jāta hūñ. 13. Maiñ apnī musībat kehtā raha aur woh chupkī suntī rahī. 14. Tum apnā kām kioñ nahīñ kīē jātē ho aur idhar udhar kiā dēkhē jātē ho?

EXERCISE 45(B)

Bullock	Bail	بیل	Grocer	Banyā	بنیا
To rob	Lūṭnā	ٹوٹنا	Same thing	Ēk hī bāt	ایک ہی بات

1. The villagers go to sleep on their carts, but their bullocks keep going along. 2. The good girls kept on sewing clothes for the soldiers, who continued to fight for their country. 3. The wicked man kept on smiling before the judge. 4. The grocer kept on robbing me for a long time. 5. The dogs kept on barking at the thieves, but they kept on doing their work. 6. What have you been doing? 7. My old servant will keep on sending letters to me. 8. How long will you go on saying the same thing? 9. We kept on watching the enemy from a high hill.

The Uses of the Verbs

“DĒKHNĀ” (دیکھنا) “SUNNĀ” (سننا)

AND “PAKARNĀ” (پکڑنا)

Dēkhnā	To see
Sunnā	To hear
Pakarnā	To catch

When these Verbs are used connected with some other Verbs in the same sentence the *Inflected Present Participle* of that Verb is invariably used before them.

Note :— “Hu ā”, the Inflected Past Participle of “hon ā” may be used with it.

EXAMPLES

- I saw the thief running.
Maiñ nē chor ko dauṛtē dēkhā.

2. She heard the child crying
Us nē bach-chē ko rotē hūē sunā.
3. I never heard him speaking English.
Main nē us ko Añgrēzi boltē kabhī nahīn sunā.
4. The grocer was caught buying stolen property.
Banyā chorī kā māl kharīdtē hūē pakṛā gayā.
5. They will arrest him selling your gun.
Who usko tumhārī bandūq bēchtē hūē pakṛēñgē.
6. We saw the aeroplane flying.
Ham nē hawāī jahāz ko uṛtē dēkhā.

EXERCISE 46(A)

Wada	Promise	وعدہ	Jurmāna	A fine
Qasam	An oath	قسم	Qasam khānā	To take an oath
Giriftār karnā	To arrest	گرفتار کرنا	Giriftār honā	To be arrested
Ghanṭī f.	Bell	گھنٹی	Bandargāh	Port (Sea)
Ṭikaṭ	Ticket	ٹکٹ	Bajnā	To be rung; To be sounded
Bajānā بجانا To sound; to beat; to ring; to play upon, etc.				

1. Maiñ nē āp usko dīwār mēñ sūrākh kartē dēkhā. 2. Tum nē dākyē ko bandargāh kī taraf jātē dēkhā? 3. Agar mēm sāheb tum ko bāwarchī khānē kē andar huqqa pītē hūē dēkhēñgī to tum par jurmāna karēñgī. 4. Maiñ nē usko qasam khātē kabhī nahīn sunā. 5. Agar tum kisī ādmī ko darakht par chaṛhtē hūē dēkho to usko giriftār karo. 6. Agar laṛkē kabūtarōñ ko uṛtē hūē

dēkhtē to un par fair kartē. 7. Agar tum is taraf jāogē to dushman kē jahāz ko dūbtē hūē dēkhogē. 8. Jab unhoñ nē khānē kī ghanṭī bajtē sunī to woh bhāgtē hūē khānē kē kamrē mēñ gaē. 9. Mālī nē is ādmī ko sarkārī bāgh mēñ phūl toṛtē hūē pakfā. 10. Maiñ nē is laṛkī ko kaī dafa kahtē sunā keh maiñ nē apnē khāwind ko wada pūrā kartē kabhī nahiñ dēkhā. 11. Jab naukar kūttoñ ko bhauñktē sunkar apnē gharoñ sē niklē to unhoñ nē choroñ ko bhāgtē dēkhā. 12. Yeh ḍarpok ādmī hamēsha mārṭē kē āgē aur bhāgtē kē pīchhē hotā hai.

Official	Sarkārī	سرکاری	Sugar	Shakar	شکر
Canal	Nahr	نہر	To carry	Lējānā	لے جانا
To bathe	Nahānā	نہانا			

1. I saw him carrying a gun that day. 2. Who heard my servant saying that? 3. When he saw me coming towards him, he began to run. 4. When I caught the servant stealing wine, I had to send him to the police. 5. Did you yourself hear him say this? 6. Did you see him stop the girl? 7. I saw many men bathing in the canal. 8. Two boys were arrested last night (in the act of) travelling without tickets. 9. The girl will catch the cook stealing sugar. 10. They heard the train coming over the bridge. 11. The officer saw the chaprasi showing the official letter to the people. 12. The General heard his brave soldiers say that they would rather go forward and attack the enemy.

Seasons (Mausam) موسم

Winter	Sardī or jāfā	سردی یا جاڑا	Summer	Garmī	گرمی
Spring	Bahār	بہار	Autumn	Khizāñ; pat jhaṛ	خزاں پت چھڑ
Rainy season			Barsāt		برسات

Words

Patron	Sarparast	سرپرست	Author	Musannif	مصنف
Page	Safha	صفحہ	Thumb	Añgūṭhā	انگوٹھا
Mark	Nishān	نشان	Business	Kār-o-bār; kām	کاروبار کام
Field	Khēt	کھیت	Wedding	Shādī f.	شادی
Prayer	Namāz	نماز	To seem	Mālūm honā	معلوم کرنا
Accused	Mulzim	ملزیم	Already	Pahlē hī	پہلے ہی
To put, to affix	Lagānā	لگانا	Trial	Mushkil, f. dushwārī f.	مشکل دشوار

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 47(A)

(On Exercises from 38 to 46).

1. The business of patron-finding is one of the trials of authorship. 2. To know whom to write for is to know how to write. 3. We are doing what we can. 4. Is there anything on this page you cannot understand? 5. I have explained it to you already. 6. There are many people in the world who cannot do anything themselves, nor do they let any body else do it. 7. Even if they want to do they can't do it. 8. Come near the table; I want to show you something. 9. Each man must put his thumb mark on the receipt of his pay, if he is not able to write his name. 10. If his pay is more than twenty rupees, two one-anna-stamps should be put on the receipt. 11. As I did not let him go to his brother's wedding, he began to cry. 12. You should not have kept a loaded gun in your house. 13. If you cannot come to your work in time you will have to live in the bungalow, and will not be allowed to go home except on Sundays. 14. I allow all my clerks to go for prayers. 15. If you should see the professor, tell him I want to see him. 16. He was to wait for the answer but it seems he has gone away. 17. If you must go, you must. 18. If you will keep on dropping your rifle, you will have to go to the guard room.

19. I used to work in the field. 20. She kept on asking me about her husband, who used to live with me in France. 21. You can take leave now or never. 22. Did you hear me call you? 23. I saw many people come out of the church. 24. The chaukidar says that he often saw the accused speaking to the gardener.

REVISIONAL EXERCISE 47(B)

- ۱۔ یہ ڈرپوک آدمی ہمیشہ مارتے کے آگے اور بھاگتے کے پیچھے ہوتا ہے۔ ۲۔ جب نوکر کتوں کو بھونکتے سن کر اپنے گھروں سے نکلے تو انھوں نے چوروں کو بھاگتے دیکھا۔
 ۳۔ میں نے آپ کو اس مدرسے میں جاتے ہوئے دیکھا۔ ۴۔ ہم نے ہوائی جہاز اڑتے ہوئے دیکھا۔ ۵۔ میں نے اس کو اُردو پڑھنے کبھی نہیں سنا۔ ۶۔ پٹھان سرحد پر رہتے ہیں۔ ۷۔ اگر تم پڑوسیوں کی مرغیاں چراتے رہو گے تو تنہا رہے ہی لیے بُرا ہوگا۔
 ۸۔ وہ بیوقوف آدمی ہمیشہ دوسروں کی بات میں دخل دیتا ہے۔ ۹۔ ہم جو کچھ کر سکتے ہیں کر رہے ہیں۔ ۱۰۔ کیا اس خط میں میرے لیے کوئی بات ہے؟ ۱۱۔ دروازے کے قریب آکر یہ چیز لو۔ ۱۲۔ آپ کون ہیں اور کہاں رہتے ہیں؟ ۱۳۔ آپ کے والد (باپ) کا کیا نام ہے؟ ۱۴۔ آج کل آپ کی والدہ (ماں) کہاں رہتی ہیں؟ کیا وہ آپ کے ساتھ ہیں؟ ۱۵۔ جی ہاں، ہم سب لوگ اکٹھا ہی رہتے ہیں۔ ۱۶۔ جو صبح سنستے اٹھتے ہیں وہ سارے دن خوش رہتے ہیں۔ ۱۷۔ اگر تم کو جانا ہی ہے تو پھر چلے جاؤ۔ ۱۸۔ کیا تم نے ریڈیو پر میری تقریر سنی تھی

PART V

USES OF SOME PARTICULAR WORDS

The Uses of "WĀLĀ" (والہ)

"Wālā" corresponds exactly with the English words "sort and kind" in the colloquial expression "sort of" and "kind of". It is used in defining or explaining the occupation, habit or characteristics of a living being or inanimate object. For example, "He is a quarrelsome sort of boy" becomes in Urdu "Woh jhagañē wālā laḳā hai". But, whereas in English the expressions "sort of" and "kind of" are only joined to Adjectives and Participle Adjectives, in Urdu "wālā" can be joined to Nouns or Verbs — or even coupled with a complete phrase. In every case it inflects the words which constitute the definition, explanation, or characterization - provided, of course, that they are susceptible to such inflection. "Wālā" itself agrees with the Noun defined.

The following are examples of its various uses:—

A fighting race	Ēk laḳnē wālī qaum
The nautch girl	Nāchnē wālī laḳī
A writer	Ēk likhnē wālā (ādmī)
A songstress	Ēk gānē wālī (aurat)
Vendor	Bēchnē wālā
Cloth merchant	Kapṛē wālā
Bookseller	Kitāb wālā
Baker	Roṭī wālā
A two anna-stamp	Do ānē wālā ṭikaṭ
A boy with a long nose	Lambī nāk wālā laḳā

Note:— When joined on to Verbs, "Wālā" may (though it does not always) imply that the action is about to begin. Thus, "ādmī daḳñē wālā ṭhā" may mean either "the man was a runner" or "the man was just going to run" in such cases the meaning can be gathered from the context.

EXERCISE 48(A)

Gadaryā	Shephard	گڈریا	Bhēryā	Wolf	بھیریا
Watch n.	Pahra	پہرہ	Qadam	Pace, step	قدم
Gaz	Yard	گزر	Kirāya	Hire, rent	کرایہ
Lāṭhī	Stick	لاٹھی	Pahrē wālā	Sentry; watchman	پہرے والا

1. Tum is andē wālē ko jāntē ho? 2. Sāheb ko do bajē wālī gāfi sē Kohāṭ ko jānā thā, lēkin un ko gāfi nahīn milī. 3. Ṭhandē mulkoñ kē rahnē wālē hamēsha garm kapṛē pahentē haiñ. 4. Maiñ Kamishnar sāheb kē sāmnē yeh bāt kahnē wālā thā, keh (when) vakīl sāheb nē mujh ko rokā. 5. Jab tum Rome mēñ ho, to tum ko Rome wāloñ kī tarah karnā chāhiē. 6. Bhēryā bakrī ko khānē wālā thā, keh gadaryē nē usko apnī bafī lāṭhī sē mār dālā. 7. Pahrē wālē sē kaho keh yahāñ aē. 8. Gāfi wālē sē pūchho keh tum ko kai ghanṭē kā kirāya chāhiē? 9. Parēd par sab rangrūṭoñ ko apnē sāmnē wālē ādmī kī pagrī kī taraf dēkhnā chāhiē. 10. Fāyer karnē wālē ādmīoñ sē pachās qadam pīchhē raho. 11. Dāk khānē jā kar ēk ēk ānē wālē chār ṭikaṭ jaldī sē lao. 12. Tum bahut laṛnē wālē ho. 13. Do bīwīoñ wālā ādmī kabhī khūsh nahīn rahtā hai. 14. Maiñ āṭh das roz kē wāstē Risālpūr jānē wālā hūñ. 15. Kenteen wālē ko bulāo. 16. Yeh kālē koṭ wālā ādmī, baṅglē wālē kā naukār hai. 17. Tum mārñē wālē kā hāth pakāṭ saktē ho, magar kahnē wālē kī zabān nahīn pakāṭ saktē.

EXERCISE 48(B)

Gold	Sonā	سونہ	Silver	Chāñdī	چاندی
Peace	Aman	امن	Guardian	Muhāfiz	محافظ
To win	Jītñā	جیتنا	To take place	Honā	ہونا
To torment	Satāñā	ستانا	To rescue	Bachāñā	بچانا
Seldom	Bahut kam	بہت کم			

1. He is a penny-cigar smoker. 2. Barking dogs seldom bite. 3. You are a big eater and a great sleeper. 4. She is a very good singer. 5. A great fair is about to take place next week. 6. Tell the fruit seller never to shout when I am asleep. 7. Ten days' leave will be given to all the fighting men. 8. There are many rifle-stealers in this place. 9. I have never seen such a smiling face. 10. The winner will get a gold watch. 11. Who is the sender of this letter? 12. He was about to sign the receipt. 13. The police is the keeper of peace and the guardian of law. 14. My rescuers captured my tormentors at once.

The Uses of "Hī"

"Hī" has no equivalent in English. It is used to give an additional emphasis in the following cases:—

- (a) "Hī" is added to the *inflected Present Participle* of a Verb to denote the sense "Immediately after"? as,

On opening—Kholtē hī, On arriving—Pahuñchtē hī.

1. No sooner did he see me, than he ran away.
Mujh ko dēkhtē hī woh bhāg gayā.
2. As soon as the door was opened, all of them entered the room.
Darwāza khultē hī, sab kamrē mēñ gāē

- (b) "Hī" is added to Nouns to make them emphatic; as,

1. It is my servant that steals all wine.
Mērā naukār hī sab sharāb churātā hai.
2. Only a camel can move in the sand.
Yeh ūñṭ hī hai, jo rēt mēñ chaltā hai.
3. It was the sentry, who broke open the lock of the treasury.
Santary hī nē khazānē kā tālā toṭā.

- (c) By adding “I, hī, or hīñ” equivalent to “very” indeed, the same”) the Pronouns and Adverbs are rendered emphatic; as,

Abhī	Just now	ابھی
Kabhī	Ever	کبھی
Tabhī	At that very time	تبھی
Yūñhī or yūñhīñ	In this very way	یونہی یونہیں
Jūñhī or Jūñhīñ	As soon as, No sooner than	جونہی جونہیں
Yahīñ	In this very place	یہیں
Wahīñ	In that very place	وہیں
Kahīñ	Any where	کہیں
Yahīñ-kahīñ	Somewhere here	یہیں کہیں
Aur kahīñ	Somewhere else	اور کہیں
Waisē hī	In that very same manner.	ویسے ہی
Yeh hī or yehī	This same or this very.	یہ ہی۔ یہی
Woh hī or wohī	That same or that very.	وہ ہی۔ وہی

The “h” can be omitted in the oblique cases of the above; as, “Is h ī or isī” ; “us hī or usī” اسی ہی اسی
اسی

EXAMPLES

This particular man was on my horse.

Yeh hī ādmī mērē ghoṛē par thā.

My brother was in that very room.

Mērā bhāī us hī kamrē mēñ thā.

He makes a hole in the very plate, off which he eats.

Woh us hī rakābī mēñ chhēd kartā hai, jis mēñ khātā hai.

The Uses of the Verb "To have"

The Verb "to have" is used in three different ways:—

- (a) As an auxiliary.
- (b) To express possession.
- (c) In place of other and more definite Verbs.

So far as (a) and (b) are concerned, its place is taken, in Urdu, by "honā"— "to be". In the case of (c) Urdu being a more precise language than English, we use the Verb which gives the exact meaning required. We will examine these in turn:—

1. An auxiliary Verb is one which helps to define the meaning of another Verb. In English "to have" and "to be" are used for the purpose. In Urdu, "to be" and "to go". Compare the following sentences in English and Urdu.

<i>English</i>			<i>Urdu</i>
I am falling	<i>Present</i>	—	I falling am
I was falling	<i>Imperfect</i>	—	I falling was
I have fallen	<i>Perfect</i>	—	I fallen am
I had fallen	<i>Pluperfect</i>	—	I fallen was
I am sent	<i>Passive</i>	—	I sent go

It will be seen that "honā" — (to be) takes the place of "to have."

2. "To have" in the sense of "to possess", also is translated by "honā"

A similar construction is met with in English — e.g. instead of "He has a friend in your office" we can say "There is a friend of his in your office." The latter can be translated almost literally into Urdu; as,

"Uskā ēk dost tumhārē daftar mēñ hai"

But in Urdu we have to distinguish between different kinds of possession, for which there are slight differences in construction:—

(a) Those which (as in the example above) take the genitive case with “kā” are as follows:

EXAMPLES

1. The woman has a large garden.
Aurat kā ēk baḡā bagħ hai.
2. My servant has two wives
Mērē naukar kī do bīwīāñ haiñ.
3. He has a long nose :— Uskī lambī nāk hai.

(b) Those which take the genitive case with “kē pās” are all portable or movable possessions- including animals

EXAMPLES

1. He has many books.
Uskē pās bahut kitābēñ haiñ.
2. The English have the largest navy.
Añgrēzoñ kē pās sab sē baḡā jañgī bēḡā hai.
3. I have two horses — Mērē pās do ghōḡē haiñ.

(c) Those which take the dative case with “ko”. These are all abstract things — such as diseases, feelings, habits, opportunity, authority, etc.

EXAMPLES

1. My servant has fever.
Mērē naukar ko bukhār hai.
2. You have no authority.
Tum ko kuchh ikhtīār nahīñ hai.

3. The horse had a bad habit of biting.

Ghoṛē ko kāṭnē kī kharāb ādat thī.

(d) "To have" is often used loosely in place of other Verbs — e.g. "I am going to have a drink" instead of, "I am to drink a drink".

1. Have a piece of cake — kēk kā ēk ṭukṛā khāo
(polite) kēk kā ēk ṭukṛā Khā-iyē
2. I want to have a talk with you.
Maiñ tumhārē sāth bāt karnā chāhtā hūñ.
3. I am going to have a shave.
Maiñ hajāmat karūñgā.

EXERCISE 49(A)

Bartan	Utensil	برتن	Sar	Head	
Jhandā	Flag	جھنڈا	Dārhī	Beard	دالہی
Golā bārūd	Ammunition	گولہ بارود	Thūknā	To spit	ٹھوکنّا
<u>kharch</u>	Expenses	خرچ	Hathyār	Arms; weapon	ہتھیار

1. Is gharīb aurat kē pās bartan nahīñ haiñ. 2. Kiā is laṛkī kē māñ bāp nahīñ haiñ? 3. Is ādmī kē pās do ghoṛē haiñ, woh ēk ghoṛā bēchnā chāhtā hai. 4. Agar tumhārē bēṭī hotī to maiñ apnē bēṭē kī shādī us kē sāth kartā. 5. Tumhārē pās bandūq hogī, aur choroñ kē pās koī hathyār nahīñ hogā, phir unko pakaṛnā kiā mushkil hai? 6. Shāmī kī lambī dārhī aur chhoṭā sar thā. 7. Vazīr sāheb kē chapṛāsī kā mizāj bahut kharāb hai. 8. Jhañḍā gāṭtē hī dushman kē sab sipāhī bhāgnē lagē. 9. Dushman kē pās na to gola bārūd hai, aur na khānā hai. 10. Agar āj mērē pās rupya hotā to is laṛkī sē shādī kartā. 11. Kanjūs ādmī kē pās bahut paisa hai, uskē martē hī us ka bēṭā sab kharch karēgā. 12. Woh afsar hotē hī bahut maghrūr hogayā. 13. Kūēñ mēñ mat thūko shāyad tum hī

ko is hī mēñ sē pānī pīnā paṛē. 14. Maiñ nē do ādmīñ kē sāmnē sab rupya jo mērē pās thā usko diā, aur un hī kē sāmnē us sē rasīd lī.

EXERCISE 49(B)

Relative	Rishteḍār	رشتہ دار	Fever	Bukhār	بخار
Rank	Darja or Ohda	درجہ/عہدہ	Proud	Maghrūr	مغرور
Sorrow	Afsos, gham	افسوس غم	Pill	Golī	گولی
Master	Mālik	مالک	To rush	Jhapaṭnā	جھپٹنا
Match	Dīā salāī	دیا سلائی	Tail	Dum	دم
Time to (spare)	Fursat	فرصت			

1. Have you got a match? 2. His dog has no tail. 3. My master says, he is sorry, he has no time to see you now. 4. My son has two guns. 5. Have you no warm clothes? 6. This boy has no books. 7. The old woman has no hair. 8. You have no business here. 9. There is no work for you to be here. 10. Has this house two doors? 11. Have you any relative in this city? 12. Who has got fever? 13. I have got your stick. 14. Have you got anything to eat? 15. As soon as the buck saw us, it ran away. 16. As soon as the tiger heard the gun fire, he rushed at me. 17. The poor syce died, soon after he fell off the horse. 18. As soon as he got the higher rank, he became very proud. 19. The gardener begins to do his work, as soon as he comes. 20. His father had his lunch in the dak bungalow. 21. If you have fever, take two pills of quinine.

PART VI

A few narrative stories are given here for translation into Urdu. To enable the students to apply the grammar rules easily, the construction of English used is, as nearly as possible, the same as in Urdu.

The students are advised first to translate a story in writing to be corrected by their Professor. After that, the Professor will tell the same story in his own words, verbally. Then the student should repeat the same story to the Professor.

The above mentioned is meant to exercise both the tongue and the ear, which will, after a short practice, be ready for use to speak and understand respectively.

EXERCISE 50

Recognize	Pahchānnā پہچاننا	Poet	Shāir شاعر
Well-known	Mash-hūr مشہور	Dissembling	Anjān bankar انجان بن کر
To copy	Naql karnā نقل کرنا	To aspire	Kā mushtāq honā کامشتاق ہونا
Aid	Madad مدد	Reputation	Shuhrat شہرت
Poem	Nazam نظم	To publish	Shāi karnā شائع کرنا
Recently	Hāl hī mēñ حال ہی میں	To hold out	Phailānā پھیلانا

A young man, aspiring to be a poet, used to publish the works of other poets in his name.

Once he copied one of Lord Tennyson's poems, took it to the editor of a wellknown paper, and asked him to be kind enough to publish it, telling him it was a poem which he had recently written.

The editor at once recognised it to be one of Lord Tennyson's poems, but dissembling asked the young poet if he had written the poem unaided. The

young man said that he had indeed written every line of it. Hearing this reply the editor rose from his chair, and held out his hand saying; "Then I am very pleased to meet you, Lord Tennyson, I thought you died years ago."

EXERCISE 51

Service	Naukri	نوکری
Order	Tartīb	ترتیب
To appear before	Kē sāmnē pēsh honā	کے سامنے پیش ہونا
Satisfactory	<u>Khātir</u> <u>khwāh</u>	خاطر خواہ
Confident	Itmīnān sē	اطمینان سے
To learn by heart	Zubānī yād karnā	زباناً یاد کرنا

A young recruit was to appear before his commanding officer. As he could not speak English at all, he was very afraid to go before the Colonel. His comrades told him that there was nothing to be afraid of, for the Colonel would ask him only three questions:

- (1) "What is your age?"
- (2) "How much service have you?"
- (3) "Are your rations and pay satisfactory?"

The recruit learnt by heart the answers to the three questions in the same order, and next day confidently went before the Colonel.

It so happened that the Colonel asked the second question first, this is to say:—

"How much service have you?"

"Twenty years," replied the recruit.

"What is your age?" asked the Colonel.

"Six months", was the reply.

Hearing this reply the Colonel said, "My good friend! if that is true, then either you or I must be mad".

"Both sir", was the prompt reply.

EXERCISE 52

Illiterate	An paḥ	ان پڑھ	Railway Station	Istēshan	یٹوے اسٹیشن
Loss	Nuqsān	نقصان	Financial	Mālī	مالی
Irate	Ghazabnāk	غضبناک	Booking clerk	Ṭikaṭ Bābū	ٹکٹ بابو
Disappointment	Māyūsī	مایوسی	Arm	Bāzū	بازو
Handle	Dasta	دستہ	To inform	khābar dēnā	خبر دینا
To depart	Rawāna honā	روانہ ہونا	Businessman	Kāro-bārī ādmī or tājir	کاروباری آدمی یا تاجر

Some years ago an illiterate businessman who had to go to a certain city reached the Railway Station just as the train was about to depart. He asked the booking clerk for a ticket, but the latter said "I cannot issue a ticket to you as the train is just going." The businessman said, "Please give me a ticket, I must catch this train, else I shall suffer a great financial loss.

On hearing this the clerk gave him a ticket, and seizing it the businessman rushed off to catch the train. On reaching the train he found it was just starting. The businessman ran up the platform, and managed to get hold of a door handle and stand on the footboard. But to his annoyance a Railway policeman caught him by the arm and pulled him off the train, saying to him, "No one is allowed to get into a moving train."

Just then the businessman saw the guard, getting into the guard's van. Off he ran and seizing the guard by the arm, pulled him off. On being asked by the irate guard why he pulled him off, the businessman told him that a Railway policeman had just told him that no one is allowed to get into a moving train.

EXERCISE 53

Tobacco	Tambākū	تنباکو	Breath	Saṅs	ہانس
Royal	Shāhī	شاہی	Unpleasant	Nāgawār	ناگوار
Jester	Maskharā	مسخرا	Field	Khēt	کھیت
To chew	Chabānā	چبانا	To graze	Charnā	چرنا
To dismiss	Barkhāst	برخواست	As usual	Māmūl	معمول کے
	karnā	کرنا		kē mutābiq	مطابق
Consequently	Is lie	اس لیے			

A king had a jester, who always used to chew tobacco. Consequently his breath was always very unpleasant. The king did not like this and several times forbade him to chew tobacco, but the jester would not give up this habit. As he was such a good jester, the king did not want to dismiss him.

It so happened that one day the king went out shooting accompanied as usual by his jester. The royal camp was pitched near some tobacco fields. There were some donkeys grazing in those fields, and the king noticed that they only ate the grass, leaving the tobacco alone.

The king at once called for his jester, and pointing to the donkeys said to him, look! even the donkeys do not eat tobacco.”

“Your Majesty is quite right, *donkeys* do not eat tobacco”, answered the jester smilingly.

EXERCISE 54

Wrath	Ghussa	غصہ
Blank	Sāda	سادہ
Distinctly	Sāf sāf	صاف صاف
Unfortunately	Badqismatī sē	بدقسمتی سے
Hesitatingly	Ruk ruk kar	رک رک کر
Are you quite sure?	Tum ko khūb yaqīn hai?	تم کو خوب یقین ہے۔

He wondered what to do. Woh hairān thā keh kīā karē (or)

kīā karnā chāhiē.

وہ حیران تھا کہ کیا کرے یا کیا کرنا چاہیے

Mr. Williams gave a letter to his servant and told him to take it to Mr. Smith. The servant took the letter, put it in his pocket; and left for Mr. Smith's bungalow. Now, his pocket being torn, the letter fell out on the way and the servant was not aware of his loss. On reaching Mr. Smith's bungalow he put his hand into his pocket to take out the letter. Being unable to find the letter, and fearing his master's wrath, he was very afraid and started back for the bungalow. Looking for it on the road, along which he had come, he reached his master's bungalow.

Not being able to find the letter, he decided to tell his master that he had lost it, and ask him to write another. Unfortunately the saheb had gone to club. Wondering what he should do about it, he suddenly had a brilliant idea. Going into his master's room he took a piece of blank note paper from the table and put it into an envelope. Having sealed the envelope he rushed off to Mr. Smith's bungalow. As he came in sight of the bungalow, he saw Mr. Smith getting into his car to go to the club.

The servant approaching the saheb made him a very low bow, and handed the letter to him, and stood with his mouth half open, waiting to see what would happen. The saheb finding no name on the envelope asked the servant for whom it was intended. "My master Mr. Williams told me to give it to you, sir", said the servant hesitatingly. Are you quite sure, because there is no name on it", said Mr. Smith. "Yes, sir, I am quite sure it is for you because my master distinctly told me that I was to give it to you personally", said the servant.

Thereupon the saheb said "I think your master must have been in a great hurry to forget to put my name on the envelope". "You are quite right, sir, he was in a great hurry. This is why he could not write anything inside, either," replied the servant promptly.

INTENSIVE

When a Verb is added to the root of another Verb to give extra force or emphasis to it, it is called an intensive. It is customary even for the uneducated people of India and India to use the intensive forms of the Verb, for by doing so the Verb carries weight and force, and gives full vent to their feelings.

The Intensives are formed by adding to the *unconjugated root* of the principal Verb, the required tense of the following Verbs, which, like an Adverb, or emphatic particle in English, play the chief part in rendering the other Verbs Intensives.

Jānā	To go	جانا	Dēnā	To give	دینا
Paṛnā	To fall	پڑنا	Lēnā	To take	لینا
Uṭhanā	To rise	اٹھنا	Ḍālnā	To cast down	ڈالنا

No definite rule can be formed to tell which particular intensifying Verb is to be added to a Verb, because different Verbs can be added to the root of the same Verb with different shades of meaning. Therefore, the knowledge of adding the appropriate Verb can only be acquired by careful notice and practice.

Usually the Transitives and Intransitives are added to the Verbs of their respective clauses, with a few exceptions. If either of the two is intransitive, the whole is treated as Intransitive, irrespective of its equivalent in English, and “ne” is not used after the subject in Past Tenses.

Intensives are not used in a negative construction, except in some particular cases.

“Kar” can never be added to any intensive.

Chauñk pañnā	To start up	چونک پڑنا
Jāg uñhnā	To wake up	جاگ اٹھنا
Nikāl dēnā	To turn out	نکال دینا
Pī jānā	To drink up	پی جانا
Khā jānā	To eat up	کھا جانا
Mar jānā	To die	مر جانا
Baiṭh jānā	To sit down	بیٹھ جانا
So jānā	To fall asleep	سو جانا
Chalā jānā	To go away	چلا جانا
Ā jānā	To come away, To turn up	آ جانا
Bol pañnā	To speak up	بول پڑنا
Bol uñhnā	<i>abruptly</i>	بول اٹھنا
Rakh lēnā	To lay by	رکھ لینا
Rakh dēnā	To set down	رکھ دینا
Mār dālnā	To kill outright	مار ڈالنا
Kāṭ dālnā	To cut down	کاٹ ڈالنا
Phēñk dēnā	To throw away	پھینک دینا
Ro pañnā	To burst into tears	رو پڑنا
Kūd pañnā	To jump down	کوڈ پڑنا
Paṛh dālnā	To read off	پڑھ ڈالنا
Ho jānā	To become, To be completed	ہو جانا
Ḍāl dēnā	To throw down, To cast down	ڈال دینا
Hañs dēnā	To laugh to enjoy	ہنس دینا
Samajh jānā	To understand	سمجھ جانا
Hañs dēnā	To laugh <i>undisguisedly</i>	ہنس دینا
Hañs pañnā	To laugh <i>involuntarily</i>	ہنس پڑنا

Kah dālnā	To speak out <i>undisguisedly</i>	کہہ ڈالنا
Gir jānā	To fall down <i>accidentally</i>	گر جانا
Kah dēnā	To tell	کہہ دینا
Ufā dērā	To blow up	اُڑا دینا
Gir paṛnā	To fall down <i>suddenly</i>	گر پڑنا
Chal paṛnā	To start off <i>suddenly</i>	چل پڑنا
Toṭ dēnā	To break up <i>accidentally</i>	ٹوٹ دینا
Toṭ dālnā	To break up <i>intentionally</i>	ٹوٹ ڈالنا
Tūṭ jānā	To be broken <i>accidentally</i>	ٹوٹ جانا
Phāṭ denā	To tear up	پھاڑ دینا
Phāṭ dālnā	To tear up <i>rashly</i>	پھاڑ ڈالنا
Dē-dēnā	To hand over	دے دینا
Dē-dēnā	To give away <i>Indiscriminately</i>	دے دینا
Lē-lēnā	To take hold of; to seize	لے لینا

The following examples will show the force of the different intensifying Verbs:—

JĀNĀ جانا

Jānā جانا is added to show *completion*; as,

Top chal gāi hai aur bāra baj gaē haiñ. Chapṛāsī baiñk sē wāpas ā gayā hai. Daftar kā sab kām hogayā hai aur kāghazoñ par dastkhāt hogaē haiñ. Sab afsar mess ko chalē gaē haiñ aur khānā khānē kē liē mēz par baiṭh gaē haiñ. Darwāzē kē sāmnē sē hat jāo aur ēk taraf baiṭh jāo. Agar mērē hāth sē kōi chīz gir jāēgī to tūṭ jāēgī, sāheb khafā hojāēñgē. Ēk ghanṭē kē bād tumhārī chīṭ-thī sāheb kē pās pahuñch jāēgī aur tum ko jawāb mil jāēgā.

(پڑنا)

Paṛnā پڑنا and uṭhnā اُٹھنا show *suddenness and surprise*; as,

Ēk rāt ko kuchh dākū ēk baṅglē mēñ ghus paṛē, ēk dākū kī bandūq ēkā ēkī chal paṛī. Uskī āwāz sē sāheb jāg uṭhā aur uskī bīwī chauñk paṛī. Sab naukar ghabrā kar kamrē kī taraf daṭ paṛē. Bhāgtē bhāgtē ēk dākū gir paṛā, chaukīdār bol uṭhā keh kaun hai? Dākū nē us kī taraf bandūq chhatyāī to bēchārā kāñp uṭhā aur ro paṛā. Bahādur chaukīdār ko rotē dēkh kar dākū hañs paṛā.

(دالنا)

Dālñā دالنا shows force, rashness, or indiscretion, as,

Ēk chor nē ēk kamrē kā darwāza toṭ dālā aur andar jā kar sab sē pahlē tēlīfūn kā tār kāṭ dālā. Jab kuttā bhauñkā to us ko mār dālā. Bahut kāghaz phāṭ dālē aur naqdī lēkar sīdhā sharāb khānē ko chalā gayā. Wahāñ pahuñch kar kaī rupai kī sharāb pī dālī. Nashē kī hālat mēñ bāqī rupai dostoñ ko dē dālē aur chorī kā sab hāl shurū sē akhīr tak kah dālā.

“DĒNĀ” دینا

Dēñā دینا is added when a person does anything for the benefit, comfort, or interest of anyone else.

“LĒNĀ” لینا

Lēñā لینا is added when a person does anything for his own interest or credit.

WORDS

Hāl	Account	حال
Shurū sē	From the beginning	شروع سے
Shurū karnā	To begin	شروع کرنا
Sīdhā	Straight	سیدھا
Bāqī	Remaining	باقی
Nasha	Intoxication	نشہ

Ēkā ēkī	All of a sudden	یکایک
Āwāz	Voice; sound, noise.	آواز
Hālat	State	حالت
Naqdī	Cash	نقدی
Ākhir	End	آخر
Ākhir tak	To the end	آخر تک
Kaḥpnā	To tremble	کاہننا
Bechāra	Poor fellow	بے چارہ
Chhatyānā	To level a gun	چھتینا
Ghabrānā	To be alarmed	گھبرانا
Sharāb khāna	Tavern; bar	شراب خانہ
Ghusnā	To force one's way in	گھسننا

EXAMPLES

1. Santarī nē afsar kē wāstē darwāza khol diā.

The sentry opened the door for the officer.

سنتری نے افسر کے واسطے دروازہ کھول دیا

2. Mālūm nahīn keh chor nē darwāza kaisē khol liā.

I wonder how the thief managed to open the door.

معلوم نہیں چور نے دروازہ کیسے کھول دیا

3. Ham nē tumhārī tankhwāh mālī ko dē-dī hai, us sē māṅg lo
(or lē-lo).

ہم نے تمہاری تنخواہ مالی کو دے دی ہے اس سے مانگ لویا لے لو

I have given your pay to the gardener, ask him for it.

4. Lo, yeh do rupai haiṅ, ēk rupiā tum lē-lo sur ēk khidmatgār ko dē-do.

Here are two rupees, you take one, and give one to the khidmatgār
(servant).

لو یہ دو روپے ہیں۔ ایک تم لے لو اور ایک خدمت گار کو دیدو

RĒL KĀ SAFAR (Railway Journey)

- Sāheb — Dēkho bearer, āj rāt ham Gorakhpūr jāēṅgē, hamārā safar kā sāmān ṭhīk karo.
- Bearer — Bahut ach-*chhā*, janāb, kaunī gāfī sē jāēṅgē? (or) gāfī kai bajē jātī hai?
- Sāheb — Gāfī ēk bajē rawāna hotī hai (or) *chhūṭtī* hai. Tāṅgē wālē sē kah-do* keh ṭhīk bāra bajē tāṅgā yahāñ lāē, dēr na karē.
- Bearer — Janāb *khātir* jama rakhēñ, dēr nahīñ hogī.

(Bara Baje)

- Bearer — Janāb tāṅgā a gayā hai.
- Sāheb — Ach-*chhā* tum sāmān tāṅgē par lādo. Dēkho gin lo kitnē bandāl haiñ; aur koī chīz bhūlnā nahīñ.
- Bearer — Janāb maiñ nē sab sāmān shām ko bāñdh kar alag ēk konē mēñ rakh diā thā.
- Sāheb — (Tāṅgē wālē sē) Ham ko dēr hogaī hai, tāṅgā tēz chalāo. Dēkho ham gāfī sē rah na jāēñ.
- Tāṅgē-wala— Janāb, ap fikr na karēñ, mērā ghoṭā hawā kī tarah tēz chaltā hai. Maiñ āp ko pāñch mināṭ mēñ isṭēshan par pahuñchā dūṅgā.

(Isteshan par pahunch kar)

- Sāheb — (Tāṅgē wālē sē) Kitnā kirāya hūā?
- Tāṅgē-wala— Janāb bārah ānē hūē.
- Sāheb — Ach-*chhā* lo yeh ēk rupīa hai. Hamārī taraf sē tum chār ānē kī miṭhāī khā-lēnā.

* Read the preceding rule about the Intensives.

Sāheb — (Bearer se) Dēkho maiñ to ṭikaṭ khārīdnē jātā hūñ, tum jākar daryāft karo keh gāfī kaunsē platform sē jāti hai, aur sab sāmān qulion par wahāñ lējāo.

Sāheb — (Ṭikaṭ Bābū se) Mehrbānī sē mujhē Gorakhpūr kā ēk awwal darjē kā, aur ēk naukar kē wāstē tīsre darjē kā ṭikaṭ jaldī sē dē-do. Gāfī kē jānē mēñ kitnī dēr hai?

Bābū — Āp ghabrāēñ nahīñ, gāfī kē jānē mēñ abhī das minaṭ bāqī haiñ.

Sāheb — Donoñ ṭikṭon kē kiā dām hūē.

Bābū — Bāsath rupai tīn ānē.

Sāheb — Hamārē pās sau rupai kā noṭ hai, āp kē pās bāqī hai?

Bābū — Jī hāñ hai, yeh saiñtis rupai tēra ānē lījīe.

(Gāfī mēñ sawār ho kar)

Sāheb — (Bearer sē) Qūlioñ ko mazdūrī dēkar jaldī sē hamārā bistar kar-do.

Bearer — Janāb bistar taīyār hai, kuchh aur hukm hai?

Sāheb — Ham ko nāshta kal subah chhē bajē chāhīē.

Bearer — Janāb aur kuchh?

Sāheb — Nahīñ aur kuchh nahīñ, bas.

(Subah ko chhe bajē)

Bearer — Janāb nāshta taīyār hai.

Sāheb — Ach-chhā rakh do. Dēkho bhūlnā nahīñ, ham ko Kānpūr mēñ gāfī badalnī hai. Wahāñ ham kis waqt pahunchēñgē?

Bearer — Koī tīñ bajkar bīs minaṭ par.

(Kānpūr kē isṭēshan par)

Gāfī isṭēshan par pahuñchī hai, magar bearer kā kuchh pata nahīñ. Sāheb
gāfī sē utartē haiñ aur qulī gāfī sē asbāb utārnā shurū kartē
haiñ keh itnē mēñ bearer bhī sāmne sē ātā hai.

Sāheb — (Khafā hokar) Bearer, jaldī karo, itnī dēr kahān rahē.

Bearer — (Rotī āwāz sē) Janāb kisī nē mērī jūtīāñ churā lī haiñ, un
ko dhūnd rahā thā.

Sāheb — (Hañs kar) Khair fikr nā karo aglī gāfī mēñ tum bhī kisī aur
ādmī kī jūtīāñ churā lēnā. Dēkho sāmān tāñgē mēñ rakho,
aur tāñgē wālē sē kaho keh O. & R. isṭēshan ko chalē.

(O. & R. isṭēshan par)

Sāheb — (Bearer sē) Dēkho maiñ to kuchh khānā khānē kē wāstē jātā
hūñ, aur tum yeh daryāft kar lo keh gāfī kai bajē jātī hai?

Bearer — Janāb rāt ko paunē das bajē.

Sāheb — Tum sē kis nē kahā?

Bearer — Janāb qulī nē.

Sāheb — Qulī ko is kī kiā khābar? Jākar isṭēshan māster sāheb sē
pūchho.

Bearer — Janāb, isṭēshan māstar sāheb kahtē haiñ kēh āj sē gāfī kā
waqt badal gayā hai, sāthē sāt bajē jāēgī.

Sāheb — Tum nē dēkhā, agar ham qulī kē kahne par rahtē to rāt bhar
isṭēshan par paṛā rahnā paṛtā.

(Kānpūr se rawānagī)

Sāheb — Yeh gāfi subha āth bajē Gorakhpūr pahuñchēgī, wahāñ pahuñchtē hī qulioñ kō bulā kar hamārā sāmān awwal darjē kē wēṭing rūm mēñ jējānā.

Bearer — Bahut ach-chhā, janāb.

(Gorakhpūr pahuñch kar)

Sāheb — Khidmatgār sē keh do keh main ēk ghanṭē mēñ nāshta karūñgā. Us sē kah kar mērē Hajāmat kā sāmān aur safēd sūt baks mēñ sē nikāl do.

(Kaprē pahōnnē kē bād)

Sāheb — Nāshta taiyār hai?

Bearer — Jī hāñ, taiyār hai.

Sāheb — (Wēṭar sē) Menū kahāñ hai?

Waiter — Janāb abhī lātā hūñ.

Sāheb — (Gosht kī taraf ishāra kar kē) Yeh kiā hai?

Waiter — Janāb, gosht hai.

Sāheb — Kiā gosht aisā hī hotā hai? Is kō kaun chabā saktā hai? Is kō lējāo, jaldī sē kuchh aur lāo. Magar khudā kē wāstē is dafa ādmīon kē khāñē kī kuchh chiz lānā.

(Nāshtē kē bāy)

Sāheb — (Bearer sē) - Ek taxī lāo, aur yeh bhī daryāft karo keh yahāñ kirāya kis hisāb sē jētē haiñ?

Bearer — Janāb taxī ā gāī hai. Pahlē ghanṭē kā kirāya bāra ānē aur bād mēñ chhe ānē se ghanṭā. Yeh sarkārī nirkh hai.

Sāheb — (Taxī wālē sē) Sēntral Hotā kō chalo.

THE NUMERALS

1	Ēk	ایک	27	Sat-tāis	ستائیس
2	Do	دو	28	Aṭ-ṭhāis	اٹھائیس
3	Tīn	تین	29	Unat-tis	انائیس
4	Chār	چار	30	Tīs	تیس
5	Pāñch	پانچ	31	Ikāt-tis	اکتیس
6	Chhe	چھ	32	Bat-tis	بئیس
7	Sāt	سات	33	Tēñtis	تینتیس
8	Āṭh	آٹھ	34	Chauñtis	چونتیس
9	Nau	نو	35	Paiñtis	پینتیس
10	Das	دس	36	Chhat-tis	چھتیس
11	Giāra	گیارہ	37	Saiñtis	سیئیس
12	Bāra	بارہ	38	Añtis	ارئیس
13	Tēra	تیرہ	39	Untālis	انخالیس
14	Chauda	چودہ	40	Chālis	چالیس
15	Pandra	پندرہ	41	Ikālis	اکتالیس
16	Sola	سولہ	42	Bayālis	بیالیس
17	Satra	سترہ	43	Tēñtālis	تینتالیس
18	Aṭṭhāra	اٹھارہ	44	Chawālis	چوالیس
19	Unnīs	انیس	45	Paiñtālis	پینتالیس
20	Bīs	بیس	46	Chhīālis	چھیالیس
21	Ik-kīs	اکیس	47	Saiñtālis	سیئنتالیس
22	Bāis	بائیس	48	Añtālis	ارنئالیس
23	Tēis	تینئیس	49	Unanchās	انچاس
24	Chaubīs	چوبیس	50	Pachās	پچاس
25	Pach-chīs	پچیس	51	Ik-kīāwan	ایکاون
26	Chhab-bīs	چھبیس	52	Bāwan	باون

53	Tirēpan	ترپن	80	Assī	اسی
54	Chaw-wan	چون	81	Ik-kīāsī	ایکیاسی
55	Pachpan	پچپن	82	Bayāsī	بیاسی
56	Chhap-pan	چھپن	83	Tirāsī	تراسی
57	Sat-tāwan	ستاون	84	Chaurāsī	چوراسی
58	Aṭ-ṭhāwan	اٹھاون	85	Pich-chāsī	پچاسی
59	Uñsaṭh	اُنسٹھ	86	Chhiāsī	چھیاسی
60	Sāṭh	ساٹھ	87	Sat-tāsī	ستاسی
61	Iksaṭh	اکٹھ	88	Aṭ-ṭhāsī	اٹھاسی
62	Bāsaṭh	باسٹھ	89	Nawāsī	نواسی
63	Tirēsath	ترسٹھ	90	Nawwē	نوے
64	Chauñsaṭh	چونسٹھ	91	Ik-kānwē	ایکاونے
65	Paiñsaṭh	پینسٹھ	92	Bānwē	بانوے
66	Chhiāsath	چھیاسٹھ	93	Tirānwē	تیرانے
67	Saṛsaṭh	سرسٹھ	94	Chaurānwē	چوراونے
68	Aṛsaṭh	اڑسٹھ	95	Pich-chānwē	پچاونے
69	Unhat-tar	اُنہتر	96	Chhiānwē	چھیانے
70	Sat-tar	ستر	97	Sat-tānwē	ستاونے
71	Ikhat-tar	اکہتر	98	Aṭ-ṭhānwē	اٹھانے
72	Bahat-tar	بہتر	99	Nin-nānwē	نینانے
73	Tehat-tar	تہتر	100	Sau	سو
74	Chauhat-tar	چوہتر	500	Pāñch sau	پانچ سو
75	Pichhat-tar	پچہتر	1,000	Ēk hazār	ایک ہزار
76	Chhiat-tar	چھہتر	100,000	Ēk lākh	ایک لاکھ
77	Sathat-tar	ستہتر	1,000,000	Das lākh	دس لاکھ
78	Aṭhat-tar	اٹھہتر	10,000,000	Ēk karoṭ	ایک کروڑ
79	Unāsī	اُناسی			

Other numbers are expressed thus:—

112	—	Ēk sau bāra (or) Ēk sau aur bāra
1,250	—	Ēk hazār do sau pachās (or) bāra sau pachās
1,916	—	Ēk hazār nau sau sola (or) unnīs sau sola
1,12,310	—	Ēk lākh, bāra hazār, tīn sau das

The Ordinals

(Or the numbers showing the order)

The first six numbers (except the 5th) are irregular, but from the 7th upwards they are formed regularly by adding “wan” to any number; as,

1st	Pahlā	پہلا	4th	Chauthā	چوتھا
2nd	Dūsra	دوسرا	5th	Pāñchwāñ	پانچواں
3rd	Tīsra	تیسرا	6th	Chhaṭā	چھٹا

From 7th upwards they are formed regularly by adding “wāñ” as 20th— Bīs wāñ, 55th — Pachpan wāñ.

Note:— The “ā” of “w āñ” is subject to change according to the Number and Gender of the following Noun; as,

1.	The first room	—	Pahlā kamra	پہلا کمرہ
2.	The seventh boy	—	Sātwāñ laṭkā	ساتواں لڑکا
3.	On the tenth horse	—	Daswēñ ghoṭē par	دسویں گھوڑے پر
4.	The fifth girl	—	Pāñchwāñ laṭkī	پانچویں لڑکی

(a) When the fractions are used *alone*, they are expressed thus:—

¼ - pāo ¼ - ādhā ¼ - paunā

Quarter of an hour — Pāo ghanṭa

Half an hour — Ādhā ghanṭa

Three quarter of an hour — Paunā ghanṭa

- (b) The compound fractions are formed by adding to the required number :—

“Sawā” and a quarter; سوا	“Sāfhē” and a half; ساڑھے
“Paunē” quarter less than. پونہ	

Note : — Only the compound fractions $1\frac{1}{2}$ and $2\frac{1}{2}$ are irregular and have special words to denote them, all the others are regular; as,

$1\frac{1}{4}$ — Sawā	$3\frac{3}{4}$ — Paunē chār
$1\frac{1}{2}$ — Dēfh (<i>irregular</i>)	$4\frac{1}{4}$ — Sawā chār
$1\frac{3}{4}$ — Paunē do	$4\frac{1}{2}$ — Sāfhē chār
$2\frac{1}{4}$ — Sawā do	$4\frac{3}{4}$ — Paunē pāñch
$2\frac{1}{2}$ — Dhāī (<i>irregular</i>)	$5\frac{1}{4}$ — Sawā pāñch
$2\frac{3}{4}$ — Paunē tīn	$5\frac{1}{2}$ — Sāfhē pāñch
$3\frac{1}{4}$ — Sawā tīn	$5\frac{3}{4}$ — Paunē chhe
$3\frac{1}{2}$ — Sāfhē tīn	$6\frac{1}{2}$ — Sāfhē chhe

Totality or universality is expressed by adding “oñ” to the ordinary Number; as,

Both	Donoñ دونوں	All the three	Tīnoñ تینوں
All the seven	Sātoñ ساتوں	All the fifty	Pachāsoñ پچاسوں

Bring both the horses here,
Donoñ ghoṛoñ ko yahāñ lāo.

دونوں گھوڑوں کو یہاں لاؤ

I have four servants, and all the four of them are lazy.
Mērē chār naukar haiñ, aur chāroñ sust haiñ.

میرے چار نوکر ہیں اور چاروں مست ہیں۔

The Multiplicatives are formed by adding the word “gunā” — (*fold*) to a cardinal number; as,

Do gunā or Dugnā	—	Twofold	دوگنا یا دوگن
Tīn gunā or Tignā	—	Threefold	تین گنا یا تینگن
Das gunā	—	Tenfold	دس گن
Pandra gunā	—	Fifteenfold	پندرہ گن

PART VII

Useful Sentences

(1) Food

1. Get my dinner quickly — Mērā khānā jaldī lāo.
2. Look here, this spoon is not clean.
Dēkho, yeh chamcha sāf nahīn hai.
3. This meat is under done — Yeh gosht kach-chā hai.
4. This potato is over-cooked. — Yeh ālū bahut gal gayā hai.
5. What fruits are there in the bazaar? — Bāzār mēn kīā kīā mēwā hai?
6. This cup is broken — Yeh pīālā tūṭā hūā hai.
7. No sir, it is not broken — Nahīn sāheb sābut hai.
8. Sharpen this knife quickly, — Yeh chhurī jaldī tēz karo.
9. Always bring fresh fish — Hamēsha tāzī machhlī lāo.
10. This bread is stale — Yeh roṭī bāsī hai.
11. Take away the tea tray — Chāē kī ṭarē lējāo.
12. Clean your hands — Apnē hāth sāf karo.
13. Don't put your finger inside the cup. — Pīālī mēn ūnglī mat ḍālo.
14. Throw this soup away — Yeh shorbā phēnkdo.
15. Look here, it smells — Dēkho is mēn bū ātī hai.

16. Bring some boiling water. — Thoḡā khaultā pāni lāo.
17. Put some more ice in it. — Is mēñ thoḡi baraf aur dālo.
18. I shall dine out tonight. — Āj shām ko mērā khānā bāhar hai.
19. This meat is bad — Yeh gosht saḡā hūā hai.
20. Bring breakfast quickly — Nāshta jaldī lāo.
21. This cheese smells — Is panīr mēñ bū hāi.
22. Don't butter the toast — Tos par makkhan mat lagāo.
23. Bring some pepper and salt. — Thoḡā namak aur gol mirch lāo.
24. I don't like ghi — Mujh ko ghī pasand nahīñ hai.
25. This orange is very sour. — Yeh saṅgtara bahut khaṡṡā hai.
26. This mango is very sweet — Yeh ām bahut mīṡhā hai.
27. This banana is very delicious. — Yeh kēlā bahut mazēdār hai.
28. The monkeynuts are bitter. — Mūñg phalīāñ karwī haiñ.
29. This is very tasteless. — Yeh bahut be maza hai.
30. Is this biscuit dry or sweet? — Yeh biskuṡ namkīn hai yā mīṡhā hai.
31. What time do you want tea, sir?—Janāb ko chāē kitnē bajē chāhīē?
32. I want tea at quarter to five.— Mujh ko chāē paunē pāñch bajē chāhīē.

(2) TIME

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. What time is it ? | — | Kiā waqt hai ? |
| 2. It is one o'clock | — | Ēk bajā hai. |
| 3. It is two o'clock | — | Do bajē haiñ. |
| 4. Quarter past one | — | Sawā bajē (not sawā ēk). |
| 5. Half past one | — | Ďerh bajē (not sāfhē ēk) |
| 6. Half past two | — | Ďhāī bajē (not sāfhē do) |
| 7. Quarter to three | — | Paunē tīn bajē. |
| 8. Quarter past three | — | Sawā tīn bajē. |
| 9. Half past three | — | Sāfhē tīn bajē. |
| 10. Quarter to four | — | Paunē chār bajē. |
11. It is ten minutes to four.
Chār bajnē mēñ das mināṭ (kam or bāqī) haiñ.
or Das mināṭ kam chār bajē haiñ.
12. It is ten minutes past four.
Chār bajkar das mināṭ hūē haiñ.
13. Are you free (or) can you spare time?
Tum ko fursat hai?
- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 14. I am very busy | — | Mujh ko bahut kām hai. |
| 15. I have no time to spare | — | Mujh ko fursat nahīñ hai. |
| 16. Be here in time | — | Waqt par ānā. |
| 17. Don't be long | — | Dēr mat karnā. |
18. How long ago?
(If a matter of hours or minutes) kitnī dēr hūī
(If a matter of month or days) kitnē dīn (or roz) hūē.

19. How long will you wait here?
Tum yahāñ *kitnē din* thairōgē.
20. How long will you stay at Bombay?
Tum Bombay mēñ *kitnē din* (or *roz*) thairōgē?
21. This clock is ten minutes slow.
Yeh ghanṭa das minaṭ pīchhē hai.
22. My watch is ten minutes fast,
Mērī ghaṭī das minaṭ āgē hai.
23. You are late — Tum dēr sē āē ho.
24. You are early — Tum waqt sē pahlē āē ho.
25. You never do any thing in time.
Tum koi kām waqt par nahīñ kartē ho.
26. Get it ready by Saturday.
Is ko haftē tak taiyār karo.
27. Have you got the watch with you?
Tumhārē pās ghaṭī hai?
28. I shall be back in a minute.
Main abhī wāpas ātā hūn.
29. How long will you take to make it?
Tum is ko kitnī dēr mēñ banāogē?

Miscellaneous Sentences

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. Is any one there ? | — | Koī (ādmī) hai? |
| 2. Come on, hurry up | — | Chalo, jaldī karo. |
| 3. Go away | — | Chalē jāo. |
| 4. Get out of the way | — | Haṭ jāo. |
| 5. Keep to the left | — | Bāēñ hāth ko chalo. |

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------|
| 6. Look to your front | — | Sāmnē dēkho. |
| 7. Get back | — | Pīchhē haṭo. |
| 8. Wait a little | — | Zara ṭhairo. |
| 9. Keep straight on | — | Sīdhē chalē jāo. |
| 10. Turn to your right | — | Dāēñ hāth ko ghūmo. |
| 11. Turn to your left | — | Bāēñ hāth ko ghūmo. |
| 12. Where have you been? | — | Tum kahāñ thē. |
| 13. Ask the manager | — | Manījar sē pūchho. |
| 14. Is the English Mail in | — | Inglistān kī ḍāk ā gai? |
| 15. Are you drunk? | — | Tum nashē mēñ ho? |
| 16. Keep awake | — | Hoshyār raho, <i>or</i> so mat |
| 17. Watch the ball | — | Gaīnd ko dēkhtē raho. |
| 18. Thank you | — | Āp kī mehrbānī hai. |
| 19. Please yourself | — | Jaisī tumhārī <u>khūshī</u> . |
| 20. Whom are you after ? | — | Kisko dēkhtē ho? |
| 21. What do you want ? | — | (Tum ko) kīā chāhiē? |
| 22. Where do you live? | — | Tumhārā ghar kahāñ hai? |
| 23. Which is the right way to the cantonment? | | |

Chhāonī ko sīdhā rāstā kaunsā hai?

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 24. How old are you ? | — | Tumhārī umr kīā hai ? |
| 25. What did he say ? | — | Usnē kīā kahā? |
| 26. Remind me tomorrow | — | Mujh ko kal yād dilāo. |
| 27. Do not speak so fast | — | Itnī jaldī mat bolo. |
| 28. What do you mean? | — | Tumhārā kīā matlab hai. |
| 29. Do you understand | — | Tum samajhtē ho? |
| 30. I do not understand you | — | Main tumhārī bāt nahīi
samajhta. |
| 31. I do not believe you. | — | Main tumhārī bāt nahīñ māntā. |

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| 32. I trust you | — | Mujh ko tumhārā etbār hai. |
| 33. I am sure | — | Mujh ko yaqīn hai. |
| 34. I don't know | — | Mujh ko mālūm nahīn. |
| 35. I am right | — | Mērī bāt thīk hai. |
| 36. You are wrong | — | Tumhārī bāt <u>ghalat</u> hai. |
| 37. Don't be afraid | — | Āro mat. |
| 38. Don't make a fool of me. | — | Mujh ko bēwaqūf mat banāo. |
| 39. Don't bother me | — | Mujh ko diq mat karo. |
| 40. Alright, leave it alone | — | Ach-chhā is ko rahnē do. |
| 41. Never mind | — | Kuchh parwā nahīn. |
| 42. Go and mind your own business | — | Jāo, apnā kām karo. |
| 43. Is there any answer to it ? | — | Is kā kuchh jawāb hai? |
| 44. No, there is no answer to it. | — | Nahīn is kā kuchh jawāb nahīn hai. |
| 45. Put an anna stamp on it. | — | Is par ēk ānē kā ṭikaṭ lagāo. |
| 46. Post this letter | — | Yeh chīṭhī dāk mēn dālo. |
| 47. What's up | — | Kiā hūā. |
| 48. Don't shout | — | Chillāo mat |
| 49. Shut up or be quiet | — | Chup raho. |
| 50. Don't chatter | — | Bak bak mat karo. |
| 51. It is useless | — | Yeh bē-fāida hai. |
| 52. I shall ride (a horse) | — | Main ghōṛē par jāōngā. |
| 53. I shall drive | — | Main gāṛī chalaōngā. |
| 54. I shall go by car | — | Main moṭor mēn jāōngā. |
| 55. I shall walk | — | Main paidal jāōngā. |
| 56. Can a man go there on a bicycle? | | |

Kia wahān ēk ādmī bāisical par jā saktā hai.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 57. Is the road fit for driving ? | — | Gāṛī chalane kā rāsta thīk hai? |
| 58. Do you know Persian ? | — | Tum Fārsī jāntē ho? |

59. Is there any one here who can speak Urdu?
Yahāñ koī Urdu bolnē wālā ādmī hai?
60. Can we get any milk in the village?
Gāoñ mēñ dūdh mil saktā hai?
61. Tell the nambardar I want him — Nāmbardar ko bulao (or)
Nambardār sē kaho kēh sāheb būlatē haiñ.
62. What do I owe you ?
Mujh par tumhārā kitnā paisa chāhīē?
63. He owes me ten rupees. — Us par mērē das rupai chāhīēñ
64. It appears — Aisā mālūm hotā hai
65. Nabbu seems to be very honest.
Nabbū bahut imāndār mālūm hotā hai.
66. This seems to be a good book.
Yeh achchhī kitāb mālūm hotī hai.
67. There is one rupee too many. — Ēk rupīa zīada hai.
68. There is one anna short. — Ēk āna kam hai.
69. I like you for it.
Mujh ko tumhārī yeh bāt pasand hai.
70. Get that man out of my sight.
Us ādmī ko mērē sāmnē sē haṭā do.
71. Why don't you speak, when you are spoken?
Jab koī bolē to jawāb kioñ nahīñ dētē ho?
72. It comes to the same thing. — Yeh ēk hī bāt hai.
73. I cannot get my tongue round this word.
Yeh lafz mērī zabān par nahīñ chaṛhṭā.
74. But me not buts. — Mujh sē agar magar mat karo.

PART VIII
(VOCABULARY)
(ENGLISH—URDU)

ABBREVIATIONS

m. — Masculine, *f.* Feminine, *adj.* Adjective, *adv.* Adverb, *c.* Conjunction
In. Interjection. *Pro.* Pronoun, *Pre.* Preposition, *v. tr.*—Verb Transitive *v.*
Int. Verb Intransitive *k.* karna; *h.* hona; *d.* dena; *j.* jana.

A			
Abandon	Chhoṭ dēnā	Abundant	Bahut.
Ability	Liāqat <i>f.</i>	Abuse	Gālī <i>f.</i>
Able <i>adj.</i>	Lāiq.	Abuse <i>v. tr.</i>	Gālī dēnā.,
Abode	Thikāna <i>m.</i>	Accept	Qabūl karnā
Abolish	Mauqūf karnā	Access	Pahuñch <i>f.</i>
Abound	Kasrat sē honā	Accident	Hādisā <i>m.</i>
About (nearly)	Taqrīban	Accordingly	Chunāñcheh.
About (Concerning)	kī bābat	According to	Kē muāfiq
Above	Kē ūpar.	Accurate	Ṭhik
Abreast	Barābar	Accusation	Ilzām <i>m.</i>
Abroad	Pardēs <i>m.</i>	Accuse	(par) ilzām
Abruptly <i>adv.</i>	Ēkā ēkī.		lagānā
Absent <i>adj.</i>	Ghair hāzīr	Accused	Mulzim
Absence <i>adj.</i>	Ghair hāzirī	Across	Kē pār
Absolute <i>adj.</i>	Mutlaq	Active	Chālāk
Absurd <i>adj.</i>	Bēhūda	Actual <i>adj.</i>	Asl
Abundance	Kasrat <i>f.</i>	Address	Pata

Admiration	Tarif <i>f.</i>	Air <i>adj.</i>	Hawāī
Admonish to	Tanbih <i>k.</i>	Airship	Hawāī
Advance (money)	Peshgi <i>f.</i>		jahāz <i>m.</i>
Advance	Āgē baḥnā	Air raid	Hawāī hamla
Advance guard	Harāwal	Alight	Utarnā <i>v. Int.</i>
Advantage	Fāeda <i>m.</i>	Alike	Yaksāh
Advice	Salāh <i>f.</i>	Alive	Zinda
Advisable	Munāsib	All	Sab
Aerial	Hawāī	Ally	Dost <i>m.</i>
Affair	Muāmla <i>m.</i>	Almond	Bādām <i>m.</i>
Affection	Muhab-bat <i>f.</i>	Almost	Qarīb qarīb
Afraid, to be	Ḍarnā	Alms	Khairāt <i>f.</i>
After	Kē bād	Alone	Akēlā
Again	Phīr	Already	Pahlē hī
Against	Kē <u>Khilāf</u>	Also	Bhī
Agitate	Ubhārnā <i>v. tr.</i>	Alter	Badalnā
Ago	Hūā	Although	Agarcheh
Agree	(Par) rāzī honā	Always	Hamēsha
Agreement	Iqrār Nāma	Ambulance	Bimaroñ kī
Agriculture	Kāshkārī <i>f.</i> or Zirā'at <i>f.</i>	Ambush	Gāfī
Agriculturist	Kāshkār	Ammunition	Ghāt
Ague	Jāfē kā bukhār <i>m.</i>	Amusing	Gola bārūd
Ahead	Āgē	Anchor	Dilchasp
Aid	Madad	Ancient	Laṅgar <i>m.</i>
Air	Hawā	Anger	Qadīm
Aim	Nishāna <i>m.</i>	Angry <i>adj.</i>	Ghussa <i>m.</i>
		Ankle	Khafā
			Takhna

Annoy	Taṅg karnā	Arrears	Bāqī f.
Annoyed <i>adj.</i>	Nārāz	Arrest	Giriṭār k
Annual	Sālāna	Arrest, to be under	Hawālāt mēñ Honā
Answer	Jawāb	Arrive	Pahuñchnā
Ant	Chīūṭī f.	Arsenal	Aslah khāna
Ant (white)	Dīmak f.	Art	Hunar m.
Anonymous	Gumnām.	Artful	Chālḥāz
Anxiety	Fikr f.	Artillery	Top khāna m.
Any	Koī <i>adj.</i>	Ascend	Charḥnā
Apart	Alag.	Ascent	Charḥāī f.
Appear	Nazar ānā.	Ascertain	Tahqīq k.
Appearance	Sūrat.	Ashamed <i>adj.</i>	Sharmina
Application	Ārzi f.	Ashes	Rākh
Appoint	Muqar-rar karnā v. tr.	Ask	Pūchhnā
Apprehend, to	Giriṭār karnā	Ask for	Māṅgnā
Approval	Manzūrī f.	Ass	Gadhā
Approve	Manzūr karna	Assist	(ko) madad dēnā
Approximately	Andāzan	Assist	(ki) Madad karnā
Area	Raqba; Ilāqa m.	Assure	(ko) Yaqīn dilānā
Argue	Hujjat k. v. tr.	Attach	Lagānā
Arm	Bāzū	Attack	(par) Hamla k.
Armed <i>adj.</i>	Hathyār band	Attempt	Koshish k.
Armpit	Baghal f.	Auction	Nīlām m.
Arms	Hathyār	Authority	Ikhtīār
Army	Fauj f.		
Arrange, to	Band-o-bast k.		
Arrangement	Band-o-bast		

Avarice	Lālach <i>m.</i>	Awkward	Anāfī
Avaricious <i>adj.</i>	Lālchi	Axe	Kulhāfī
Average	Ausat <i>f.</i>	Axle	Dhura

B

Back	Pīṭh <i>f.</i>	Bath	Ghusl <i>m.</i>
Back <i>adv.</i>	Wāpas	Bathe	Nahāñā
Backwards <i>adv.</i>	Pīchhē	Battle	Lafāī <i>f.</i>
Bag	Thailī <i>f.</i>	Bayonet	Saṅgīn <i>f.</i>
Baggage	Asbāb <i>m.</i>	Be, to	Honā
Bail	Zamānat <i>f.</i>	Beak	Choñch <i>f.</i>
Bald	Ganjā	Bear <i>v. tr.</i>	Uṭhānā
Bamboo	Bāñs <i>m.</i>	Bear	Bhālū; rīchh <i>m.</i>
Banana	Kēlā <i>m.</i>	Beard	Dārhī <i>f.</i>
Bandage	Paṭṭī <i>f.</i>	Beast	Jānwar <i>m.</i>
Bank; shore	Kināra <i>m.</i>	Beat, to	Mārnā
Banker	Sarrāf <i>m.</i>	Beautiful	Khūbsūrat
Banner	Jhandā <i>m.</i>	Beauty	Khūbsūrtī <i>f.</i>
Barber	Nāī, haj-jām <i>m.</i>	Because	Kioñkeh <i>c.</i>
Bare (naked)	Nañgā	Beckon <i>v. tr.</i>	Ishāra <i>k.</i>
Bargain	Saudā <i>m.</i>	Become, to	Ho jānā
Bark of a tree	Chhāl <i>f.</i>	Bed	Palañg <i>m.</i>
Bark, to	Bhauñknā	Bedding	Bistar <i>m.</i>
Barley	Jau <i>m.</i>	Beef	Gāē kā gosht <i>m.</i>
Barrel (gun)	Nālī <i>f.</i>	Before	Sē pahlē or kē sāmñē
Base (mean)	Kamīna	Beggar	Faqīr <i>m.</i>
Basket	Ṭokra <i>m.</i> or Ṭokri <i>f.</i>		

Begin	Shurū <i>k.</i>	Blind	Andhā
Behaviour	Chāl chalan	Blood	<u>Khūn</u> ; lahū <i>m.</i>
Behind	Kē pīchhē	Blue	Nilā
Believe, to	Yaqīn <i>k.</i>	Blunt	Kund
Bell	Ghanṭī	Board	Takhta <i>m.</i>
Belly	Pēṭ <i>m.</i>	Boast <i>v. tr.</i>	Shēkhī mārṇā
Belt	Peṭī <i>f.</i>	Boat	Kishtī <i>f.</i>
Bend	Jhuknā; moṭnā	Body	Badan, Jism <i>m.</i>
Benefit	Fāeda <i>m.</i>	Body (dead)	Lāsh <i>f.</i>
Besides	Kē alāwa	Boil	Phoṛā <i>m.</i>
Besiege	Ghērṇā	Boil <i>v. int.</i>	Khaulnā
Bet	Shart <i>f.</i>	Boil <i>v. tr.</i>	Khaulānā
Better	Behtar	Bold	Dilēr
Between	Kē darmiān	Bone	Hadḍī <i>f.</i>
Beyond	Kē parē; bāhar	Booty	Lūṭ kā māl
Bier	Janāza <i>m.</i>	Border	Kīnāra
Bill (account)	Hisāb <i>m.</i>	Born (to be)	Paidā honā
Bird	Parinda	Borrow	Qarz lēnā
Bitch	Kutīā <i>f.</i>	Bosom	Sīnā <i>m.</i>
Bite	Kāṭnā	Both	Donoñ
Bitter	Kaṭwā	Bough	Shākh
Blacksmith	Lūhār <i>m.</i>	Boundless	Bē-had
Blank (paper)	Sādā	Boundary	Had <i>f.</i>
Blanket	Kambal <i>m.</i>	Bouquet	Guldasta <i>m.</i>
Bless	(ko) Du'ā dēnā	Box	Sandūq
Blessing	Du'ā <i>f.</i>	Boy	Laṭkā
		Boyhood	Laṭakpan

Brain	Bhēja <i>m.</i>	Buck	Hiran <i>m.</i>
Bran	Chokar	Bucket	Bālṭī <i>f.</i>
Branch	Shākh	Buffalo	Bhaiṅs <i>f.</i>
Brass	Pītal	Build	Banānā
Brave	Bahādur	Bullet	Golī <i>f.</i>
Bravery	Bahādurī	Bullock	Bail <i>m.</i>
Bread	Roṭī <i>f.</i>	Bunch	Guch-chhā
Break	Toṛnā	Bundle	Gaṭhī <i>f.</i>
Breakfast	Nāshta; hāzrī	Burn <i>v. tr.</i>	Jalānā
Breast	Chhātī	Burn <i>v. Int.</i>	Jalnā
Breath	Dam; sāṅs	Burden	Bojh
Bribe	Rishwat	Burst	Phaṭnā
Brick	Īnṭ <i>f.</i>	Bury	Dabānā
Bridge	Pul <i>m.</i>	Bush	Jhāfī <i>f.</i>
Bright	Raushan	Business	Kām; kār-o-bār <i>m.</i>
Bring	Lānā	But	Lēkin
Bring up	Pālnā	Butt	Kunda <i>m.</i>
Broken	Tūṭā hūā.	Butcher	Qasāī
Broom	Jhāṛū <i>f.</i>	Buy	Kharīdnā
Brother	Bhāī		

C

Cage	Pinjra <i>m.</i>	Camel	Ūṅṭ <i>m.</i>
Calamity	Āfat <i>f.</i>	Camp	Paṛāo
Calculate	Hisāb lagānā <i>m.</i>	Campaign	Laṛāī <i>f.</i>
Calculation	Hisāb		lām <i>m.</i>
Call, to	Bulānā	Camphor	Kāfur. <i>m.</i>
		Canal	Nahr <i>f.</i>

Candle	Mom battī <i>f.</i>	Cease	Mauqūf <i>k.</i>
Cane	Bēnt (or) Bēd	Cease fire.	To gola bārī band <i>k.</i>
Cannon	Top <i>f.</i>	Ceiling	Chhat <i>f.</i>
Cantonment	Chhāonī <i>f.</i>	Centre	Bīch or Markaz <i>m.</i>
Cap	Ṭopī	Century	Sadī <i>f.</i>
Capital (town)	Dārul <u>khilāfā</u>	Ceremony	Rasm <i>f.</i>
Capture	Pakaṛnā	Certainly	Zarūr, Bēshak.
Caravan	Qāfla <i>m.</i>	Chain	Zanjīr
Care	Fikr; parwāh	Chair	Kursī
Care, to take	<u>Khabardār</u> honā	Chance	Ittefāq
Carefully	Hūshyārī sē	Change, to	Badalnā
Careless	Bē parwāh	Charcoal	Koelā.
Carpenter	Baḥāī <i>m.</i>	Cheap	Sastā
Carriage	Gāṛī <i>f.</i>	Cheat, to	Thagnā
Carry	Lējānā	Cheese	Panīr <i>m.</i>
Cartridge	Kārtūs <i>m.</i>	Chew	Chabānā.
Case (law)	Muqad-dama.	Child	Bach-cha <i>m.</i>
Case (condition)	Hāl	Chin	Ṭhofī <i>f.</i>
Cash	Naqd <i>m.</i>	Cholera	Haiza <i>m.</i>
Caste	Zāt <i>f.</i>	Choose	Pasand <i>k.</i>
Casualty	Nuqsān (Murdē aur <u>Zakhmī</u>)	Church	Girjā <i>m.</i>
Cat	Bil-lī	Circle	Ghērā <i>m.</i>
Catch	Pakaṛnā	City	Shahr <i>m.</i>
Cause	Sabab <i>m.</i>	Claim	Dāwā <i>m.</i>
Cavalry	Risāla	Class	Darja
Cave	<u>Ghār</u>		

Clean, clear	Sāf	Corner	Kona <i>m.</i>
Clever	Hūshyār	Correct	Thīk
Cleverly	Hūshyārī sē	Count	Ginnā
Climb	Chahṇā	Country	Mulk <i>m.</i>
Clip, to	Kātnā	Country (Rural)	Āhāt
Clock	Ghaṇṭa <i>m.</i>	Cover <i>v. tr.</i>	Āhknā or Āhāknā
Cloth	Kapṭā <i>m.</i>	Covetous	Lālchī
Cold, cool	Ṭhandā	Cow	Gāē <i>f.</i>
Collect	Jama karnā	Coward	Buzdil; ḍarpok
Commence	Shurū <i>k.</i>	Cowherd	Goālā; Charwāhā
Common	Ām, m'āmūlī	Cream	Malāī <i>f.</i>
Commonly	Amūman	Crew	Jahāzī
Complain, to	Shikāyat <i>k.</i>	Crime	Jurm <i>m.</i>
Complete	Pūrā	Crooked	Ṭeṭhā <i>adj.</i>
Compound	Ehāta <i>m.</i>	Crop	Fasl <i>f.</i>
Comrade	Sāthī <i>m.</i>	Cross	Kē pār jānā
Conceal	Chhupānā	Cross-road	Chaurāha <i>m.</i>
Condition	Hālat	Crow	Kawwā <i>m.</i>
Confidently	Itmīnān sē	Crowd	Hujūm
Consent	Marzī <i>f.</i>	Crown	Tāj <i>m.</i>
Consider	Sochnā	Cruel	Zālim
Contagious	Phailnē wālā	Cruelty	Zulm
Continually	Barābar; musalsal	Cry <i>v. Int.</i>	Ronā, chil-lānā
Contract	Ṭhēka <i>m.</i>	Culprit	Mujrim <i>m.</i>
Contractor	Ṭhēkēdār	Cultivation	Khētī <i>f.</i>
Copy <i>v. tr.</i>	Naql <i>k.</i>		
Cord	Ḍorī <i>f.</i>		

Cultivator	Kisān	Curve	Mor <i>m.</i>
Cup	Pīālā <i>m.</i>	Cushion	Gaddī <i>f.</i>
Cunning	Chālāk	Custom	Dastūr
Cure <i>v. tr.</i>	Ilāj <i>k.</i>	Customs	Mahsūl <i>m.</i>
Curtain	Parda <i>m.</i>	Customer	Gāhak <i>m.</i>
		Cut <i>v. tr.</i>	Kāṭnā

D

Dacoit	Ḍākū	Dear (expensive)	Mañhgā
Daily	Roz marra	Dear (Beloved)	Pīārā
Damage	Nuqsān <i>m.</i>	Death	Maut
Damage <i>v. tr.</i>	Nuqsān <i>k.</i>	Debt	Qarz
Damp	Namdār	Debtor	Qarzdār
Dance	Nāch <i>m.</i>	Deceitful <i>adj.</i>	Farēbī
Dance <i>v. tr.</i>	Nāchnā	Deceived, to be	Dhoka khānā
Danger	Ḍār, <u>kh</u> atra <i>m.</i>	Decide <i>v. tr.</i>	Faisla <i>k.</i>
Dangerous <i>adj.</i>	<u>Kh</u> aufnāk	Decorate <i>v. tr.</i>	Sajānā
Dark	Andhērā	Deduct <i>v. tr.</i>	Kāṭnā
Date	Tārīkh <i>f.</i>	Deep	Gahrā
Date (fruit)	Khajūr <i>m.</i>	Deface <i>v. tr.</i>	<u>Kh</u> arāb <i>k.</i>
Daughter	Bēṭī	Defeat	Shikast <i>f.</i>
Dawn <i>adv.</i>	Din nīklē	Defeat <i>v. tr.</i>	Shikast <i>d.</i>
Day	Din or roz <i>m.</i>	Defeated, to be	Shikast khānā
Day by day	Roz roz	Defect	‘Aīb <i>m.</i>
Dead of night	Ādhi rāt	Defective	‘Aībdār
Deaf <i>adj.</i>	Bahrā	Defence	Bachāo <i>m.</i>
Dealing	Lēn dēn <i>m.</i>	Defend	Bachānā

Deficient	Kam	Dirty	Mailā
Defile v. <i>tr.</i>	Ganda <i>k.</i>	Disappear v. <i>Int.</i>	Ghāib <i>h.</i>
Delay v. <i>tr.</i>	Dēr <i>k.</i>	Disease	Bīmārī <i>f.</i>
Delicate	Nāzūk	Disgrace v. <i>tr.</i>	Ruswā karnā
Delight	Khūshī	Dishonest	Bē-īmān
Delicious	Mazēdār	Dismiss	Barkhāst <i>k.</i>
Demand v. <i>tr.</i>	Māṅgnā	Dismissed, to be	Chhuṭnā
Demolish v. <i>tr.</i>	Ujāfnā	Dismount	Utārnā
Denial	Inkār <i>m.</i>	Disperse	Tit-tar bit-tar <i>k.</i>
Deny v. <i>tr.</i>	(sē) Inkār <i>k.</i>	Displease v. <i>Int.</i>	Nākhūsh <i>k.</i>
Depart v. <i>Int.</i>	Chalnā	Disposition	Mizāj <i>m.</i>
Departure	Rawāṅgī <i>f.</i>	Distance	Fāsla <i>m.</i>
Department	Mahakma <i>m.</i>	Distinctly	Sāf sāf.
Descend v. <i>Int.</i>	Utārnā	Distribute v. <i>tr.</i>	Bāṭṭnā
Describe v. <i>tr.</i>	Bayān <i>k.</i>	District	Zila' <i>m.</i>
Desert	Sahrā	Ditch	Khāī; khandaq
Desert, to	Bhāg jānā	Divide v. <i>tr.</i>	Bāṭṭnā
Deserter	Bhāgoṭā <i>m.</i>	Donkey	Gadhā.
Destiny	Qismat <i>f.</i>	Double <i>adj.</i>	Dugnā
Destroy v. <i>tr.</i>	Barbād <i>k.</i>	Doubt	Shak <i>m.</i>
Devil	Shaitān <i>m.</i>	Drain	Nālī.
Dew	Os <i>f.</i>	Drop	Qatra; būnd
Diamond	Hirā <i>m.</i>	Drown v. <i>tr.</i>	Dūbnā
Die	Marnā	Duck	Bat-takh
Difference	Farq <i>m.</i>	Dung (horse)	Līd <i>f.</i>
Different	Mukhtalif	Dung (cow)	Gobar <i>m.</i>
Difficult <i>adj.</i>	Mushkil	Dust	Khāk <i>f.</i>
Difficulty	Mushkil	Duty	Farz <i>m.</i> Naukrī <i>f.</i>
Dig v. <i>tr.</i>	Khodnā		

E

Each	Har ěk	Enemy	Dushman <i>m.</i>
Ear	Kān	Engagement (battle)	Laḥāī
Early	Sawērē	Engagement (business)	Masrūfiat
Early in the morning	Subah sawērē	Enlist <i>v. tr.</i>	Bhartī <i>k.</i>
Earn <i>v. tr.</i>	Kamānā	Enmity	Dushmanī
Earth (ground)	Zamīn <i>f.</i>	Enough	Kāfi
Earth (world)	Dunyā <i>f.</i>	Enquiry	Tahqīqāt
Earthquake	Bhauñchāl <i>m.</i>	Enter	Dākhl <i>h.</i>
Ease	Ārām	Entirely	Bilkul
East	Mashriq <i>f.</i>	Entrench	Morcha banān
Education	Tālim	Envelope	Lifāfa <i>m.</i>
Effects	Asbāb; māl	Equal <i>adj.</i>	Barābar
Effort	Koshish <i>f.</i>	Erase <i>v. tr.</i>	Mitānā
Electric pole	Bijlī kā khambā	Erect <i>v. tr.</i>	Khāḥā <i>k.</i>
Elephant	Hāthī	Escape	Bachnā
Emperor	Shahanshāh	Especially	Khāskar
Empire	Saltanat	Etcetera	Waghaira
Employed, to be	Naukar honā	Even	Bhī
Employment	Naukrī <i>f.</i>	Evening	Shām
Empty <i>adj.</i>	Khālī	Every	Har
Encampment	Paḥō <i>m.</i>	Ever	Kabhī
Encamp <i>v. tr.</i>	Ḍērē ḍālnā	Evidence	Gawāhī
Enclosure	Baḥā chāta	Evident <i>adj.</i>	Zāhir
Encourage	Himmat dilānā	Evil <i>adj.</i>	Burā
End of a rope	Rassi ka Sirā <i>m.</i>	Examination	Imtihān <i>m.</i>
Endless <i>adj.</i>	Bēhad	Examiner	Mumtāhin

Example	Misāl	Executioner	Jal-lād <i>m.</i>
Exceedingly	Nihāyat	Exertion	Mehnat <i>f.</i>
Except	Kē siwā	Expenditure	<u>Kh</u> arch <i>m.</i>
Exercise (Physical)	Warzish <i>f.</i>	Expensive <i>adj.</i>	Mehñgā
Exercise (practice)	Mashq <i>f.</i>	Explain <i>v. tr.</i>	Samjhānā
Excess	Ziādtī	Explanation	Bayān <i>m.</i>
Excuse	Uzr <i>m.</i>		Jawāb <i>m.</i>
Excuse to,	Muāf <i>k.</i>	Extinguish <i>v. tr.</i>	Bujhānā
		Eye	Āñkh <i>f.</i>

F

Face	Muñh; chehra <i>m.</i>	Fear <i>v. Int.</i>	Ďarnā
Fact	Asl bāt <i>f.</i>	Feed <i>v. tr.</i>	Khilānā
Fair (show)	Mēla	Felt	Namda <i>m.</i>
Fair <i>adj.</i>	<u>Kh</u> āsa	Female	Māda <i>f.</i>
Faithful	Wafādār	Fence	Bāf <i>f.</i>
Falsehood	Jhūṭ	Fever	Bukhār <i>m.</i>
Family	Kunba <i>m.</i>	Few	Chand
Famous	Mash-hūr	Field (cultivated)	Khēt <i>m.</i>
Fare	Kirāya <i>m.</i>	Field (of battle)	Maidān <i>m.</i>
Farrier	Nāl band <i>m.</i>	Field glasses	Dūrbīn
Fat <i>adj.</i>	Moṭā	Fight	Laṭāī <i>f.</i>
Fate	Qismat <i>f.</i>	Fight, to	Laṭnā
Fatigue	Thakān	Fill <i>v. tr.</i>	Bharnā
Fault	Qasūr <i>m.</i>	Filth	Kūṭā
Favour	Mehrbānī	Find <i>v. tr.</i>	Pānā
Fear	Ďar <i>m.</i>	Fine (money)	Jurmānā <i>m.</i>
		Fine <i>v. tr. (par)</i>	Jurmānā <i>k.</i>

Fine <i>adj.</i>	Umda	Fly, to	Uṭnā
Finger	Uṅglī	Foolishness	Bēwaqūfī
Finish <i>v. tr.</i>	<u>Khatm</u> <i>k.</i>	Foot of hill	Pahāṛ kā
Finish <i>v. Int.</i>	<u>Khatm</u> <i>h.</i>		dāman
Fire	Āg <i>f.</i>	Forbid <i>v. Int.</i>	Mana karnā.
First	Pahlā	Forest	Jaṅgal.
Flag (big)	Jhandā <i>m.</i>	Forward	Āgē.
Flag (small)	Jhandī <i>f.</i>	Forget <i>v. Int.</i>	Bhūlnā
Floor	Farsh <i>m.</i>	Friday	Jum'a
Flow	Bahnā	Friend	Dost.
Flower	Phūl <i>m.</i>	Front	Sāmnē.

G

Game	Shikār <i>m.</i>	Gonorrhoea	Sozāk <i>m.</i>
Game (play)	Khēl	Goods	Māl <i>m.</i>
Garden	Bāgh	Govern <i>v. tr.</i>	Hukūmat <i>k.</i>
Gate	Phāṭak	Government	Sarkār; <i>f.</i>
Gather <i>v. tr.</i>	Jama <i>k.</i>		hukūmat <i>f.</i>
Gather <i>v. Int.</i>	Jama <i>h.</i>	Government <i>adj.</i>	Sarkāri.
Generally	Aksar	Gradually <i>adj.</i>	Rafta rafta
Gently	Āhista sē	Grain	Dāna <i>m.</i>
Girth	Jisāmat <i>f.</i>	Grape	Aṅgūr <i>m.</i>
Glad <i>adj.</i>	<u>Khūsh</u>	Grass	Ghāṅs
Glove	Dastāna <i>m.</i>	Gratis	Muft
Goat	Bakrā <i>m.</i>	Gratuity	In'ām <i>f.</i>
God	<u>Khudā</u> <i>m.</i>	Grave	Qabr <i>f.</i>
Gold	Sonā <i>m.</i>	Graze	Charnā
Goodness	Bhalāī, nēkī <i>f.</i>	Green <i>adj.</i>	Harā

Grief	Ranj <i>m.</i>	Guest	Mehmān <i>m.</i>
Groom <i>v. tr.</i>	Mālīsh <i>k.</i>	Guess <i>v. tr.</i>	Qayās <i>k.</i>
Ground	Zamīn <i>f.</i>	Guide	Rehnumā <i>m.</i>
Groundless <i>adj.</i>	Bē bunyād	Guide <i>v. tr.</i>	Rāsta batānā
Grow	Ugnā	Gun (shot)	Bandūq
Guardian	Muhāfiz	Gun (canon)	Top <i>f.</i>
		Gun-powder	Bārūd

H

Habit	Ādat <i>f.</i>	Hatred	Nafrat <i>f.</i>
Hair	Bāl	Haughty <i>adj.</i>	Maghrūr
Half <i>adj.</i>	Ādhā	Haversack	Jholā <i>m.</i>
Halt	Muqām <i>m.</i>	Head	Sir
Handkerchief	Rūmāl <i>m.</i>	Health	Sehat <i>f.</i>
Handle	Dasta <i>m.</i>	Healthy	Tandurust
Hang (suspend) <i>v. tr.</i>	Laṭkānā	Heap	Dhēr <i>m.</i>
Hang (execute) <i>v. tr.</i>	(ko) Phānsī <i>d.</i>	Hear, to	Sunnā
Happen <i>v. tr.</i>	Wāqē <i>h.</i>	Heart	Dil <i>m.</i>
Happiness	<u>Khūshī</u> <i>f.</i>	Heat	Garmī <i>f.</i>
Hard	<u>Sakht</u>	Heaven	Bahisht <i>f.</i>
Hare	<u>Khargosh</u> <i>m.</i>	Heavy <i>adj.</i>	Bhārī
Harm	Nuqsān	Hedge	Bāṭ <i>f.</i>
Harness	Sāz <i>m.</i>	Heel	Ēfī <i>f.</i>
Haste	Jaldī <i>f.</i>	Height	Uñchāī <i>f.</i>
Hasten	Jaldī <i>k.</i>	Hell	Jahannam <i>m.</i>
Hate <i>v. tr.</i>	(sē) Nafrat <i>k.</i>	Help <i>v. tr.</i>	(ko) Madad <i>d.</i>
		Helpless <i>adj.</i>	Bēchārah

Hen	Murghī	Home (native place) Watan	<i>m.</i>
Herd	Galla	Honesty	Īmāndārī
Hesitation	Jhi-jhak	Honour	Izzat
Hide <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhupānā	Hoof	Sum
Hill (single)	Pahāfī	Hope	Ummīd
Hills (Group)	Pahāf	Host	Mēzbān
Hinder <i>v. tr.</i>	Roknā	However	Magar
Hire	Kirāya	Human being	Insān
History	Tārikh	Hunger	Bhūk
Hit	Mārnā	Hungry	Bhūkā
Hold <i>v. tr.</i>	Pakafnā	Hunt	Shikār
Hole (in earth)	Gāfhā	Hurt	Choṭ
Hole	Chhēd,	Hurt <i>v. Int.</i>	Choṭ lagnā
	sūrākh	Hut	Jhoṇpfī
Holiday	Chhuṭī		

I

Ice	Barf	In future	Āinda
Idea	Khīāl	In charge	Zimmē-wār
Idle	Sust	Include	Shāmil
Ignorant	Jāhil, nādān	Income	Āmdanī
Immediately	Fauran	Inconvenience	Taklīf
Impatient	Bēsabr	Increase	Bāfhānā
Impertinence	Gustākhī	Indeed	Bēshak
Impertinent	Gustākh	Infantry	Paidal,
Important	Zarūrī		palṭan
Impossible	Nā mumkin	Inform	Khābar
Imprison	Qaid	Information	Khābar

In front	kē sāmne (or) Āgē wālā	Intend v. tr.	Irāda k.
Inhabitant	Bāshinda m.	Intention	Irāda m.
Injure v. tr.	Nuqsān k.	Intentional adj.	Jān būjh kar
Injustice	Bē-insāfi f.	Interest (of money)	Sūd m.
Ink	Sīāhi f.	Interest (in a matter)	Matlab m.
Inkpot	Dawāt	Intoxication	Nasha m.
Inn	Sarāē f.	Intrenchment	Nālī, khandaq f.
Innocent adj.	Bēgunāh	Intrigue	Sāzish f.
Insect	Kifā m.	Invade v. tr.	Par hamla k.
Insensible adj.	Bē-hosh	In vain adv.	Bēfāeda
Insist v. tr.	Zid karnā	Invasion	Hamla m.
Insolent adj.	Gustākh	Investigation v. tr.	Tahqīqāt k.
Inspect v. tr.	Mulāhiza k.	Inward	Andar kī taraf f.
Inspection	Mulāhiza m.	Iron	Lohā m.
Instalment	Qist f.	Irregular adj.	Bēqāeda
Instead of	Kē badlē	Island	Ṭāpū; Jazīra m.
Insufficient	Nā kāfi	Issue (an order)	Jārī k.
Insult v. tr.	Bē-izzatī k.		
Intelligent adj.	Aqlmand		

J

Jackal	Gidaṛ m.	Joint n.	Joṭ
Jaw	Jabṭā m.	Joke v. tr.	Mazāq k.
Jealous adj.	Hāsīd	Journey	Safar m.
Jerk v. tr.	Jhaṭkā mārṇā	Joy	Khūshī f.
Jester	Maskharā m.	Jump v. tr.	Kūdṇā
Jewel	Zēwar m.	Justice	Īnsāf m.

K

Keen	Shauqīn	Kindness	Mehrbānī <i>f.</i>
Keep	Rakhnā	Kindly	Mehrbānī sē
Kettle	Kētlī <i>f.</i>	King	Bādshāh
Key	Chābī <i>f.</i>	Kingdom	Bādshāhat
Kick (man)	Thokar mārṇā	Kitchen	Bawarchī- <u>khāna</u> <i>m.</i>
Kick (of horse) <i>v. tr.</i>	Lāt mārṇā	Kite (bird)	Chīl <i>f.</i>
Kill	Mār dālṇā	Knee	Ghuṭṇa <i>m.</i>
Killed	Mār jānā	Know	Jānnā
Kind (sort)	Qism <i>f.</i>	Knowingly <i>adj.</i>	Jān būjh kar
Kind <i>adj.</i>	Mehrbān	Knowledge	Ilm <i>m.</i>

L

Labour	Mehnat <i>f.</i>	Lend	Qarz dēnā
Ladder	Sīfhi <i>f.</i>	Less	Kam
Lake	Jhīl <i>f.</i>	Lesson	Sabaq
Lame <i>adj.</i>	Laṅgṛā	Letter	Chīṭ-ṭhī <i>f.</i>
Land	Zamīn		<u>Khat</u> <i>m.</i>
Language	Zabān <i>f.</i>	Lick <i>v. tr.</i>	Chāṭṇā
Law	Qānūn	Lie (animate)	Lēṭnā
Leaf	Patta <i>m.</i>	(inanimate)	Paṭnā
Learn <i>v. tr.</i>	Sikhnā	Life	Jān <i>f.</i>
Leather	Chamṛā <i>m.</i>	Light	Roshnī <i>f.</i>
Leave	Chhuṭ-ṭī <i>f.</i>	Light <i>adj.</i>	Halkā
Leave <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhoṛnā	Light <i>v. tr.</i>	Jalānā
Left	Bāyāñ	Like <i>v. tr.</i>	Pasand karnā
Leg	Tāñg <i>f.</i>	Like <i>adv.</i>	Kī tarach
Leisure	Fursat <i>f.</i>	Likewise	Is hī taran

Limit	Had <i>f.</i>	Look	Dēkhnā
List	Fehrist	Look for	Talāsh <i>k.</i>
To live (dwell) <i>v. int.</i>	Rahnā	Loose <i>adj.</i>	Ḍhīlā
To live (exist) <i>v. int.</i>	Jīnā	Lose <i>v. tr.</i>	Khonā
Load	Bojh <i>m.</i>	Lose (a bet) <i>v. tr.</i>	Hārñā
Load <i>v. tr.</i>	Lādnā	Loss	Nuqsān
Lock, to	Tālā lagānā	Luck	Qismat <i>f.</i>

M

Mad <i>adj.</i>	Pāgal	Message	Paighām <i>m.</i>
Mail train	Ḍāk gāfī <i>f.</i>	Method	Tarīqa <i>m.</i>
Mango tree	Ām kā darakhṭ	Middle	Bīch; wast
Manner	Tarīqa <i>m.</i>	Mile	Mīl <i>f.</i>
March <i>v. tr.</i>	Kūch karnā	Military	Fauj <i>f.</i>
Mark	Nishān <i>m.</i>	Mind	Dil <i>m.</i>
Marriage	Shādī <i>f.</i>	Mischief	Sharārat <i>f.</i>
Marry <i>v. tr.</i>	Sē shādī <i>k.</i>	Miserly <i>adj.</i>	Kanjūs <i>f.</i>
Master (owner)	Mālik	Misfortune	Musībat <i>f.</i>
Matter	M'ūāmlā <i>m.</i>	Missing	Kam, ghāib
Measure <i>v. tr.</i>	Nāpnā	Mistake	Ghalatī <i>f.</i>
Meat	Gosht <i>m.</i>	Mix <i>v. tr.</i>	Milānā
Medal	Tamgha <i>m.</i>	Money (ready)	Naqd <i>m.</i>
Meddle	Ḍākhīl dēnā	Monkey	Bandar <i>m.</i>
Medical	Ḍāktar kā or Tib-bī	Month	Mahīna
Medicine	Dawā <i>f.</i>	Moon	Chānd <i>m.</i>
Mend <i>v. tr.</i>	Marammat <i>k.</i>	Mount <i>v. tr.</i>	Chāṭhnā
Merchant	Saudāgar or Tājir	Mountain	Pahāṭ
		Mouth	Muṭh <i>m.</i>
		Mud	Kīchar

Muddy <i>adj.</i>	Gadlā	Mosquito	Mach-chhar <i>m.</i>
Mule	<u>Kh</u> ach-char <i>m.</i>	Mount, to	Charhnā
Murder	Qatl <i>k.</i>	Mutiny	<u>Gh</u> adar <i>m.</i>

N

Nail	Kil <i>f.</i>	Net	Jāl <i>m.</i>
Nail (of finger)	Nā <u>kh</u> un <i>m.</i>	News	<u>Kh</u> abar <i>f.</i>
Naked <i>adj.</i>	Na <u>h</u> gā	Noble <i>adj.</i>	Sharif
Narrow <i>adj.</i>	Ta <u>h</u> g	Noise	Shor <i>m.</i>
Nation	Qaum <i>f.</i>	Nonsense	Wāhiāt <i>f.</i>
Native <i>adj.</i>	Dēsī	Noon	Do pahar
Navy	Behrī Beḥā <i>m.</i>	North	Shumāl <i>m.</i>
Necessary <i>adj.</i>	Zarūrī <i>f.</i>	Nose	Nāk <i>f.</i>
Necessity	Zarūrat	Nowadays	Āj kal
Neck	Gardan <i>f.</i>	Now and then	Kabhī kabhī
Neglect <i>v. tr.</i>	<u>Gh</u> aflat <i>k.</i>	Nuisance	Wabāl <i>m.</i>
Neighbour	Paḥausī <i>m.</i>	Number	Gintī, <i>f.</i> tedād <i>f.</i>
Neighbourhood	Paḥaus <i>m.</i>	Numerous <i>adj.</i>	Bēshumār

O

Oath (to take an)	Qasm khānā	Often <i>adv.</i>	Āksar
Obey <i>v. Int.</i> (hukm)	Mānnā	Old age	Buḥhāpā
Object	Matlab <i>m.</i>	Once	Ēk dafa
Object <i>v. tr.</i>	Etrāz <i>k.</i>	Only	Sirf
Oblique	Tefhā; Tirchhā	Open, to	Kholnā
Obtain	Hāsil <i>k.</i>	Openly <i>adv.</i>	Zāhir meḥ
Occasion	Mauqa <i>m.</i>	Ordinary	Māmūlī
Occupation	Pēsha <i>m.</i>	Opinion	Rāe <i>f.</i>
Offend, to <i>v. tr.</i>	Nārāz <i>k.</i>	Opportunity	Mauqa <i>m.</i>
Official <i>adj.</i>	Sarkārī	Opposite	Sāmnē

Oppress <i>v. tr.</i>	Satānā	Original	Asl
Oral	Zabānī	Ornament	Zēwar <i>m</i>
Order (method)	Tartīb	Otherwise	Warna
(command)	hukm	Outward	Bāhar kī taraf
Orderly	Ardalī <i>m.</i>	Owner	Mālik <i>m.</i>
		Ox	Bail <i>m.</i>

P

Pace	Qadam <i>m.</i>	Peace	Sulah <i>f.</i>
Pack <i>v. tr.</i>	Bāndhnā	Peacock	Mor <i>m.</i>
Page	Safha <i>m.</i>	People (plural)	Log
Pain	Dard	Perfectly	Bilkul
Pains, to take	Mehnat karnā	Permission	Ijāzat
Paint	Rang <i>m.</i>	Person	Shakhs <i>m.</i>
Pair Pole <i>Adj.</i>	Joḡā <i>m.</i>	Petition	Arzī
Palm tree	Khajūr kā darakhṭ	Picture	Taswīr <i>f.</i>
Panic	Sakhṭ	Piece	Tukḡā <i>m.</i>
	ghabrāhaṭ	Pigeon	Kabūtar <i>m.</i>
Parade	Qawāid, parēd	Pillow	Takya <i>m.</i>
Pardon, to <i>v. tr.</i>	Mu'āf <i>k.</i>	Pipal tree	Pīpal kā darakhṭ
Parents	Māñ bāp	Pit	Gaḡhā <i>m.</i>
Part	Hissa <i>m.</i>	Place	Jagah <i>f.</i>
Particular <i>adj.</i>	Khās kar	Play <i>v. tr.</i>	Khēlnā
Particularly <i>adj.</i>	Khās kar	Pleader	Vakil
Partridge	Titar <i>m.</i>	Please, to	Khūsh <i>k.</i>
Pass <i>v. Int.</i>	Guzarnā	Pleasure <i>v. tr.</i>	Khūshī
Pass <i>v. tr.</i>	Guzarnā	Plunder <i>v. tr.</i>	Lūtnā
Passage	Rāsta <i>m.</i>	Pocket	Jēb
Passenger	Musāfir <i>m.</i>	Poet	Shāir
Patience	Sabr <i>m.</i>	Poem	Nazm
Pay	Tankhūwāh; Talab <i>f.</i>	Point out <i>v. tr.</i>	Batlānā

Point at	Ishāra <i>k.</i>	Previously	Pahlē
Port	Bandargāh	Price	Qīmat <i>f.</i>
Poplar tree	Chunār kā darakht	Profit	Fāeda; nafa
Potato	Ālū <i>m.</i>	Prohibit <i>v. tr.</i>	Mana <i>k.</i>
Pour <i>v. tr.</i>	Īlānā	Promise	W'āda <i>m.</i>
Powder (Gun)	Bārūd <i>f.</i>	Promptly	Phurtī se
Power	Tāqat <i>f.</i>	Property	Māl <i>m.</i>
Praise	Tārīf	Proof	Sabūt <i>m.</i>
Preparation	Tāiyārī	Proud <i>adj.</i>	Maghrūr
Prepare, to	Tāiyār <i>k.</i>	Publish <i>v. tr.</i>	Shā'ī <i>k.</i>
Present	Hāzīr	Pull <i>v. tr.</i>	Khēñchnā
Pretend <i>v. tr.</i>	Bahāna <i>k.</i>	Punish <i>v. tr.</i>	Sazā <i>d.</i>
Prevent <i>v. tr.</i>	Roknā	Purpose	Matlab <i>m.</i>
		Push	Dhakkā <i>d.</i>

Q

Quail	Baṭēr	Queer <i>adj.</i>	Ājīb
Quarrel	Jhagṛā <i>m.</i>	Question <i>v. tr.</i>	Sawāl <i>k.</i>
Quarrel <i>v. Int.</i>	Jhagafnā	Quickly	Jaldī se
Queen	Malka <i>f.</i>	Quietly	Chupkē se
Question	Sawāl <i>m.</i>	Quite <i>adv.</i>	Bilkul

R

Race (Horse)	Ghurdauf	Range, striking distance	Mār
Race (tribe)	Qaum <i>f.</i>	Rank	Darja, ohda <i>m.</i>
Rain <i>f.</i>	barish, Mēñh <i>m.</i>	Rat	Chūhā
Rain <i>v. Int.</i>	Mēñh barasnā	Rate	Nirkh; bhāo <i>m.</i>
Rainy season	Barsāt <i>f.</i>	Raw <i>adj.</i>	Kachchā
Raise	Uṭhānā	Real	Aslī
Random (at)	Aṭkal pachchū	Reasonable	Munāsib
Range of hills	Pahāññī kā Silsila	Rebel	Bāghī <i>m.</i>

Rebel <i>v. tr.</i>	Baghāwat	Revenge	(se) Badla lēnā
Receipt	Rasīd	Reward	In 'ām
Recently	Hāl hī mēñ	Reward <i>v. tr.</i>	In 'ām <i>d.</i>
Recognize <i>v. tr.</i>	Pahchānnā	Rice	Chāwal <i>m.</i>
Recommend <i>v. tr.</i>	Sifārish <i>k.</i>	Ride <i>v. tr.</i>	Sawār <i>h.</i>
Recruit	Raṅgrūṭ	Riches	Daulat <i>f.</i>
Refuse <i>v. tr.</i>	(se) Inkār <i>k.</i>	Rifle	Rāifal <i>f.</i>
Regiment	Paṭṭan <i>f.</i>	Right (Proper)	Ṭhik
Regret <i>v. Int.</i>	Pachhtānā	Right (not left) <i>adj.</i>	Dāyāñ or Dāhnā
Reins	Bāg <i>f.</i>	Ripe <i>adj.</i>	Pakkā
Relation	Rishta <i>m.</i>	Rise <i>v. Int.</i>	Uṭhnā; nikalnā
Relative	Rishtedār <i>m.</i>	River	Daryā <i>m.</i>
Release <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhofnā	Road Metalled	Saṛak
Religion	Mazhab <i>m.</i>	Roar	Dhāt <i>f.</i>
Remember <i>v. tr.</i>	Yād <i>k.</i>	Rob <i>v. tr.</i>	Lūṭnā
Remind <i>v. tr. (ko)</i>	Yād dilānā	Robber	Ḍākū <i>m.</i>
Rent	Kirāya	Robbery	Ḍāka
Repairs	Marammat <i>f.</i>	Rock	Chaṭān <i>f.</i>
Repair <i>v. tr.</i>	Kī Marammat <i>k.</i>	Roof	Chhat <i>f.</i>
Repeatedly <i>adv.</i>	Bār bār	Root	Jaṭ <i>f.</i>
Repent <i>v. tr.</i>	(sē) Pachhtānā	Rope	Rassī <i>f.</i>
Report <i>v. tr.</i>	Khabar dēnā	Rotten <i>adj.</i>	Saṛā hūā
Request <i>v. tr.</i>	Darkhwāst <i>k.</i>	Round <i>adj.</i>	Gol
Resign <i>v. tr.</i>	Istīfa dēnā	Row (a line)	Qatār <i>f.</i>
Resignation	Istīfa <i>m.</i>	Royal	Shāhī
Resist <i>v. tr.</i>	Roknā	Rub <i>v. tr.</i>	Malnā
Responsible <i>adj.</i>	Zimmēwār	Rubbish	Kūṛā <i>m.</i>
Rest	Ārām <i>m.</i>	Ruin <i>v. tr.</i>	Barbād <i>k.</i>
Rest <i>v. tr.</i>	Ārām <i>k.</i>	Rule	Qāeda <i>m.</i>
Restless <i>adj.</i>	Bē chain	Rush	Jhapaṭnā
Result	Nāṭija <i>m.</i>	Rust	Zang <i>m.</i>
Revenge	Badla <i>m.</i>		

S

Saddle	Zīn	Senseless	Bēhosh
Safe <i>adj.</i>	Salāmat, mahfūz	Separate <i>v. tr.</i>	Judā <i>k.</i>
Safety	Hifāzat	Separately <i>adv.</i>	Judā judā
Salt	Namak <i>m.</i>	Serve <i>v. tr.</i>	Naukrī <i>k.</i>
Salutation	Salām <i>m.</i>	Service	Naukrī <i>f.</i>
Salute <i>v. tr.</i>	Ko salām <i>k.</i>	Settle (account)	Chukānā
Same	Woh hī; ēk hī	Several <i>adj.</i>	Kai
Sample	Namūna	Severe	Sakht
Sand	Rēt <i>f.</i>	Sew <i>v. tr.</i>	Sinā
Satisfy <i>v. tr.</i>	Mutma 'in k	Shade (shadow)	Sāyā <i>m.</i>
Satisfactory	Qābil-e-itminān	Shake <i>v. tr.</i>	Hilānā
Save <i>v. tr.</i>	Bachānā	Shame	Sharm <i>f.</i>
Scar	Dāgh <i>m.</i>	Shameless <i>adj.</i>	Bēsharm
Scatter <i>v. tr.</i>	Bakhernā	Share	Hissa <i>m.</i>
Scissors	Qaiñchī <i>f.</i>	Sharpen <i>v. tr.</i>	Tēz karnā
Scratch <i>v. tr.</i>	Khujānā	Sheet (bed)	Chādar <i>f.</i>
Screw	Pēch <i>m.</i>	Ship	Jahāz <i>m.</i>
Screw-driver	Pēch kash <i>m.</i>	Shirt	Qamīz
Search <i>v. tr.</i>	Talāsh <i>k.</i>	Shoe	Jūtā
Season	Mausam <i>m.</i>	Shoe (horse)	Nāl
Secret	Bhēd, rāz <i>m.</i>	Shore	Kinārā
Secretly <i>adv.</i>	Chupkē sē	Shorts	Jāñgiā, nēkar <i>m.</i>
Seed	Bīj	Shoulder	Kandhā <i>m.</i>
Select <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhāñṭnā	Shout	Chil-lānā
Sell	Bēchnā	Show	Dikhānā
Send	Bhējnā	Shut	Band <i>k.</i>
Send (for person)	Bulānā	Sick	Bīmār
Send (for thing)	Mañgwānā	Sickness	Bīmārī <i>f.</i>
Sense	Hosh <i>m.</i>	Side	Taraf <i>f.</i>
		Side (of person)	Pahlū <i>m.</i>

Seize <i>v. tr.</i>	Pakaṛnā
Sight; show	Tamāsha
Sign <i>v. tr.</i>	Ishāra <i>k.</i>
Sign (a paper) <i>v. tr. (par)</i>	Dastkhat <i>k.</i>
Signature	Dastkhat <i>m.</i>
Silence	Khāmoshī <i>f.</i>
Silent <i>adj.</i>	Chup
Silk	Rēsham
Silver	Chāndī <i>f.</i>
Sin	Gunāh <i>m.</i>
Sing <i>v. Int.</i>	Gānā
Single file	Ēk qatār
Sink	Dūbnā
Sister	Bahen
Sit	Baiṭhnā
Skilful <i>adj.</i>	Hūshyār
Skin	Khāl <i>f.</i>
Sky	Āsmān <i>m.</i>
Slave	Ghulām <i>m.</i>
Sleep	Nīnd <i>f.</i>
Sleep, to	Sonā
Sleeve	Āstīn
Slip <i>v. Int.</i>	Phisalnā
Slow	Dhīmā; āhista
Smell <i>v. tr.</i>	Sūnḡhnā
Smoke	Dhūān <i>m.</i>
Snake	Sāṅp
Snatch <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhīn lēnā
Snipe	Chāha
Sock	Moza <i>m.</i>
Soft	Narm
Some	Kuchh

Sometimes	Kabhī Kabhī
Somewhere	Kahīñ
Sorrow	Afsos
Sort	Qism <i>f.</i>
Soup	Shorbā <i>m.</i>
South	Junūb
Spare <i>adj.</i>	Fāltū
Special	Khās
Speed	Raftār <i>f.</i>
Spend <i>v. tr.</i>	Kharch <i>k.</i>
Spit <i>v. tr.</i>	Thūknā
Spoil <i>v. tr.</i>	Bigāṛnā; barbād karnā
Spoon	Chamcha <i>m.</i>
Spread <i>v. tr.</i>	Phailānā
Spread <i>v. Int.</i>	Phailnā
Spy	Jāsūs <i>m.</i>
Squander <i>v. tr.</i>	Barbād <i>k.</i>
Stable	Astabal <i>m.</i>
Stale <i>adj.</i>	Bāsī
Stand <i>v. Int.</i>	Khafā <i>h.</i>
Start	Rawānā hona
Statement	Bayān <i>m.</i>
Steal <i>v. tr.</i>	Churānā
Step	Qadam
Step out, to	Qadam baṛhānā
Stone	Pat-thar <i>m.</i>
Stop	Roknā
Storm	Tūfān
Storm (wind)	Āndhī
Story	Kahānī <i>f.</i>
Storey (of house)	Manzil <i>f.</i>
Straight <i>adj.</i>	Sīdhā
Stranger	Ghair ādrī <i>m.</i>

Strap	Tasma <i>m.</i>	Such	Aisā
Stream	Naddī <i>f.</i>	Summer	Garmī <i>f.</i>
Strength	Tāqat <i>f.</i>	Sun	Sūraj <i>m.</i>
Strike	Mārnā	Sun-shine	Dhūp
Student	Tālib-e-ilm	Suspiciously	Shak kē sāth
Submarine	Īubaknī kishtī	Sweets	Mithāī
Success	Kāmyābī	Sword	Talwār <i>f.</i>
Successful	Kāmyāb <i>h.</i>	Sympathy	Hamdardī <i>f.</i>

T

Tail	Dum	Threaten <i>v. tr.</i>	Dhamkī <i>d.</i>
Tall	Lambā	Throat	Galā
Take	Lēnā	Throw <i>v. tr.</i>	Phēñknā
Take off	Utārnā	Thumb	Añgūthā <i>m.</i>
Take out	Nikālñā	Thunder	Garaj <i>f.</i>
Tank	Talāb <i>m.</i>	Thus <i>adv.</i>	Is tarah
Tape	Fita <i>m.</i>	Tiger	Shēr
Target	Nishāna	Tie <i>v. tr.</i>	Bāndhnā
Teach <i>v. tr.</i>	Sikhāñā	Tigress	Shērnī
Telegram	Tār <i>m.</i>	Tight <i>adj.</i>	Tañg
Temper	Mizāj <i>m.</i>	Time	Waqt.
Temporary <i>adj.</i>	Ā'rzī	Time (leisure)	Fursat <i>f.</i>
Tent	Dēra; tambū	Tongue	Zabān <i>f.</i>
Terrible	Khāufñāk	Tooth	Dāñt <i>m.</i>
Theft	Chorī	Top of hill	Pahār kī choṭī
Therefore	Is wāstē; Is liē	Torment	Satāñā
Thick <i>adj.</i>	Moṭā	Touch <i>v. tr.</i>	Chhūñā
Thigh	Rāñ; jāñgh <i>f.</i>	Tour	Daura <i>m.</i>
Thin, lean	Dublā, patlā <i>m.</i>	Towards	Kī taraf
Thing	Chīz <i>f.</i>	Towel	Taulīa <i>m.</i>
Think <i>v. tr.</i>	Khīāl <i>k.</i>	Tower	Burj <i>m.</i>
Thirsty	Pīāsā		
Thorn	Kāñṭā <i>m.</i>		
Thought	Khīāl		
Thousand	Hazār		

Transport	Bār bardārī	Trick	Chāl <i>f.</i>
Travel <i>v. tr.</i>	Safar	Trouble	Taklīf <i>f.</i>
Treasury	<u>Khazāna</u>	Trousers	Patlūn or Paejāma
Traveller	Musāfir	Try <i>v. tr.</i>	Koshish <i>k.</i>
Treat <i>v. tr.</i>	Salūk <i>k.</i>	Tunnel	Surāṅg
Treatment (Medical)	Ilāj	Turn	Ghumānā
Tremble <i>v. Int.</i>	Kāḥpnā	Tyranny	Zulm <i>m.</i>
Trench	Morcha	Tyrant	Zālim
Tribe	Qabīla <i>m.</i>		

U

Ugly	Badsūrat	Unreasonable	Bējā
Unaware	Bēkhabar	Unsafe	<u>Khatarnāk</u>
Unconscious	Bēhosh	Unusual	<u>Ghair māmulī</u>
Understand	Samajhnā	Upper	Ūpar kā
Undoubtedly	Bēshak	Urgent <i>adj.</i>	Zarūrī
Unfit <i>adj.</i>	Nāqābil	Urine	Pēshāb
Unfortunate	Bad qismatī sē	Use (benefit)	Fāeda
Uniform	Wardī <i>f.</i>	Use <i>v. tr.</i>	Istemāl <i>k.</i>
Union	Anjuman <i>f.</i>	Useless	Bēfāeda
Unintentionally	Nādānista	Usual <i>adv.</i>	Māmūlī
Unopposed	Bē rok ṭok	Usually	Amūman
Unpleasant	Nāgawār	Utensil	Bartan <i>m.</i>

V

Vacant <i>adj.</i>	<u>Khālī</u>	Verification	Tasdīq <i>f.</i>
Vaccinate	Tika lagānā	Vicious	Badzāt
Value	Qīmat	Victory	Fatah, Jīt <i>f.</i>
Valuable <i>adj.</i>	Qīmī	Victorious	Fatehmand
Vegetable	Tarkārī	Village	Gāoñ <i>m.</i>
Verbal	Zabānī	Vinegar	Sirka <i>m.</i>

Virtue	Nēkī <i>f.</i>	Vow	Ahd <i>m.</i>
Voice	Āwāz <i>f.</i>	Vulture	Gidh
Vomit <i>v. tr.</i>	Qai <i>k.</i>		

W

Waist	Kamar <i>f.</i>	Widow	Bēwa
Wall	Dīwār <i>f.</i>	Width	Chaufāī <i>f.</i>
War	Lafāī <i>f.</i>	Wife	Bīwī
Warn	Taṇbih	Wild	Jaṅglī
Wash <i>v. tr.</i>	Dhonā	Wilfully	Jān būjh kar
Waste <i>v. tr.</i>	Barbād <i>k.</i>	Willingly <i>adj.</i>	Khūshī sē
Weapon	Hathiār <i>m.</i>	Win <i>v. tr.</i>	Jitnā
Weather	Mausam <i>m.</i>	Wind	Hawā <i>f.</i>
Wedding	Shādī <i>f.</i>	Winding	Moḍār
Weight <i>v. tr.</i>	Tolnā	Window	Khīfkī <i>f.</i>
Weight	Wazan <i>m.</i>	Wine	Sharāb
Well	Kūān <i>m.</i>	Wing	Bāzū <i>m.</i>
Well <i>adj.</i>	Tandurust	Winter	Jāfā <i>m.</i>
Well-known <i>adj.</i>	Mashhūr	Wipe <i>v. tr.</i>	Poñchhnā
West	Maghrib	Wire	Tār <i>m.</i>
Whatever	Jo kuchh	Wisdom	Aql <i>f.</i>
Whenever	Jab kabhī	Wise	Aqlmand
Wherever	Jahān kahīñ	Without	Kē baghair
Wheel	Pahiya <i>m.</i>	Witness	Gawāh <i>m.</i>
Whip	Chābuk <i>m.</i>	Wolf	Bhēfiā <i>m.</i>
Whistle <i>v. tr.</i>	Sīṭī bajānā	Wonder <i>v. tr.</i>	Ta'ajjub <i>k.</i>
Whistle <i>f.</i>	Sīṭī	Wonderful <i>adj.</i>	Ajīb
White	Safēd	Wood	Lakṭī <i>f.</i>
Whole	Sab; Tamām	Woollen <i>adj.</i>	Ūnī
Wick <i>f.</i>	Battī	Word	Lafz <i>m.</i>
Wicked	Badmāsh	Work	Kām

World	Dunyā <i>f.</i>	Wrath	Ghussa <i>m.</i>
Wound	Zakhm <i>m.</i>	Wrist	Kalāī <i>f.</i>
Wounded <i>adj.</i>	Zakhmī	Write	Likhnā
Wrap <i>v. tr.</i>	Lapēṭnā	Wrong <i>adj.</i>	Ghalat

Y

Yard	Gaz	Yet	Abhī tak; phir bhī
Year	Sāl	Yoke	Jūā <i>m.</i>
Yearly <i>adv.</i>	Har sāl	Yoke <i>v. tr.</i>	Jotnā
Yellow <i>adj.</i>	Pīlā, zard	Young	Jawān
Yesterday	Kal	Youth	Jawānī <i>f.</i>

Z

Zeal	Sargarmī <i>f.</i>	Zigzag	Pēchdār; Moṭ toṭ kar
Zealous <i>adj.</i>	Sargarm	Zinc	Jast <i>m.</i>

VOCABULARY

(B) URDU—ENGLISH

A

Achānak	Suddenly	‘Aqlmand	Wise
Adab <i>k.</i>	To respect	Aksar <i>adv.</i>	Often
Adālat	Court	Aman	Peace
Ādat <i>f.</i>	Habit	Amīr	Rich
Afsar <i>f.</i>	Officer	Andar	Inside
Afwāh <i>f.</i>	Rumour	Andhā	Blind
Āg <i>f.</i>	Fire	Andhērā	Dark
Agar	If	Āñkh <i>f.</i>	Eye
Agarche	Although	Āñ <i>f.</i>	Shelter
Āgē	Ahead	Ārām	Ease, rest
Āinda	In future	Arzī <i>f.</i>	Application
Aisā	Such	Āsān	Easy
Ajīb	Wonderful	Asbāb	Baggage
Āj kal	Nowadays	Ausat <i>f.</i>	Average
Akēlā	Alone	Awwal	First

B

Bābat	Concerning	Bahādur	Brave
Bachcha	Child	Bahādurī <i>f.</i>	Bravery
Bachnā <i>Intr.</i>	To escape	Bāhar	Out
Bachānā <i>v. tr.</i>	To save	Bahen <i>f.</i>	Sister
Bā’d	After	Bahnā	To flow
Badalnā	Change	Bail	Bullock
Bādla	Revenge	Baiṭhnā	To sit
Bādshāh	King	Bāqāeda	Regular
Bāgh	Garden	Bāqī	Remainder;
Bāghair	Without		Balance

Bakrā	Goat (he)	Bē <u>kh</u> abar	Unaware
Bakrī	Goat (she)	Bhāgnā	To run away
Bāl	Hair	Bhāī	Brother
Balke	But	Bharnā	To fill
Banānā	To make	Bhauñknā	To bark
Band <i>k.</i>	To shut	Bhējnā	To send
Bandāl	Bundle	Bhī	Even, also
Bandar	Monkey	Bhīk <i>f.</i>	Alms
Bāp	Father	Bhūlnā	To forget
Barābar	Equal	Bīch	Middle
Barbād <i>k.</i>	To destroy	Bilkul	Quite
Bārish	Rain	Bīmār	Sick
Bartān	Utensil	Bistar	Bedding
Bāsāṭh	Sixty-two	Bīwī <i>f.</i>	Wife
Bāt	Matter, talk	Botal <i>f.</i>	Bottle
Bāwarchī- <u>kh</u> āna	Kitchen	Bukhār	Fever
Bēchnā	To sell		

C

Chabānā	To chew	Chhāonī <i>f.</i>	Cantonment
Chādar <i>f.</i>	Sheet	Chhoñnā	To leave
Chāqū	Knife (Pen)	Chhūnā	To touch
Chālāk	Active; cunning	Chhupānā	To hide
Chalnā	To walk; to start	Chil-lānā	To cry; shout
Chalānā	To make go; to drive	Chokar <i>f.</i>	Bran
Chañhnā	To get on	Chor	Thief
Chauṛā	Wide	Chup	Silent
Chaurāha <i>m.</i>	Cross road	Chupkā	Quietly
Chhat <i>f.</i>	Roof	Chūnāñche	Accordingly
		Chūnke	Since; because
		Churānā	To steal

D

Dabānā	To bury; to press	Daulatmand	Wealthy
Dāgh	Scar	Daura	Tour
Dakhl <i>d.</i>	To meddle	Dauḡnā	To run
Ḍākū	Dacoit	Dawā or Dawāī	Medicine
Ḍākya	Postman	Dawāt <i>f.</i>	Inkpot
Dālnā	To pour; to drop	Dēkhnā	To see
Dām	Price	Dēra	Tent
Dāna	Grain	Dhoka	Deceit
Dāñt	Tooth	Dhonā	To wash
Darakht	Tree	Dhundnā	To search
Dard	Pain	Dhūp <i>f.</i>	Sunshine
Dārhī <i>f.</i>	Beard	Dikhnā	To show
Darja <i>m.</i>	Grade, rank; class	Dil	Heart
Darmiān	Between	Din	Day
Ḍarpok	Cowardly	Dīwār <i>f.</i>	wall
Daryā	River	Dūbnā	To be drowned
Daryāft <i>k.</i>	To find out	Dūdh	Milk
Dastkhat	Signature	Dum <i>f.</i>	Tail
Dastūr	Custom	Dukān <i>f.</i>	Shop
Daulat <i>f.</i>	Wealth	Dunyā <i>f.</i>	World
		Dūrbīn <i>f.</i>	Telescope
		Dushman	Enemy

E

Ehāta	Enclosure; compound	Ekā ēkī	All of a sudden
		Etbār	Trust

F

Farq	Difference	Fauran	At once
Farsh	Floor	Fī	Per
Fāsla	Distance	Fikr <i>f.</i>	Anxiety, worry
Fauj	Army	Fursat <i>f.</i>	Leisure

G

Gadhā	Donkey	Ghuṛdauṛ <i>f.</i>	Race (horse)
Gāē <i>f.</i>	Cow	Ghuṭnā	Knee
<u>Gha</u> flat <i>f.</i>	Neglect	Ginnā	To count
Gahrā	Deep	Girānā	To drop
<u>Gha</u> latī <i>f.</i>	Mistake	Gird (pre)	Round
Gālī <i>f.</i>	Abuse	Giriftār <i>k.</i>	To arrest
<u>Ghā</u> liban	Probably	Girjā	Church
Gānā	To sing	Girnā	To fall
Gāoñ	Village	Gol <i>adj.</i>	Round
Gardan <i>f.</i>	Neck	Golī <i>f.</i>	Bullet
Gaṛhā	Pit	Gosht	Meat
Gawāh	Witness	Guch-chhā	Bunch
Gawāhī <i>f.</i>	Evidence	Gumnām	Anonymous
Ghanṭa	Hour, clock	Gunāh	Sin
Ghanṭī <i>f.</i>	Bell	<u>Ghu</u> sl <u>khā</u> na	Bathroom
Ghāñs <i>f.</i>	Grass	Gustākh	Impertinent
Ghāt <i>f.</i>	Ambush		

H

Hafta	Week;	Hāmēñ (accusative)	Us
	Saturday	Hamēsha	Always
Hajāmat <i>f.</i>	Shaving	Hamla	Attack
Hāl	Account, state	Hañsnā	To laugh

D

Dabānā	To bury; to press	Daulatmand	Wealthy
Dāgh	Scar	Daura	Tour
Dakhl <i>d.</i>	To meddle	Dauḥnā	To run
Ḍākū	Dacoit	Dawā or Dawāī	Medicine
Ḍākya	Postman	Dawāt <i>f.</i>	Inkpot
Dālnā	To pour; to drop	Dēkhnā	To see
Dām	Price	Dēra	Tent
Dāna	Grain	Dhoka	Deceit
Dāñt	Tooth	Dhonā	To wash
Darakht	Tree	Dhundnā	To search
Dard	Pain	Dhūp <i>f.</i>	Sunshine
Dārhī <i>f.</i>	Beard	Dikhnā	To show
Darja <i>m.</i>	Grade, rank; class	Dil	Heart
Darmiān	Between	Din	Day
Ḍarpok	Cowardly	Dīwār <i>f.</i>	wall
Daryā	River	Dūbnā	To be drowned
Daryāft <i>k.</i>	To find out	Dūdh	Milk
Dastkhat	Signature	Dum <i>f.</i>	Tail
Dastūr	Custom	Dukān <i>f.</i>	Shop
Daulat <i>f.</i>	Wealth	Dunyā <i>f.</i>	World
		Dūrbīn <i>f.</i>	Telescope
		Dushman	Enemy

E

Ehāta	Enclosure; compound	Ekā ēkī	All of a sudden
		Etbār	Trust

F

Farq	Difference	Fauran	At once
Farsh	Floor	Fī	Per
Fāsla	Distance	Fikr <i>f.</i>	Anxiety, worry
Fauj	Army	Fursat <i>f.</i>	Leisure

G

Gadhā	Donkey	Ghurdaur <i>f.</i>	Race (horse)
Gāē <i>f.</i>	Cow	Ghuṭnā	Knee
<u>Gha</u> flat <i>f.</i>	Neglect	Ginnā	To count
Gahrā	Deep	Girānā	To drop
<u>Gha</u> latī <i>f.</i>	Mistake	Gird (pre)	Round
Gālī <i>f.</i>	Abuse	Giriftār <i>k.</i>	To arrest
<u>Ghā</u> liban	Probably	Girjā	Church
Gānā	To sing	Girnā	To fall
Gāoñ	Village	Gol <i>adj.</i>	Round
Gardan <i>f.</i>	Neck	Golī <i>f.</i>	Bullet
Gaṛhā	Pit	Gosht	Meat
Gawāh	Witness	Guch-chhā	Bunch
Gawāhī <i>f.</i>	Evidence	Gumnām	Anonymous
Ghanṭa	Hour, clock	Gunāh	Sin
Ghanṭī <i>f.</i>	Bell	<u>Ghu</u> sl <u>khā</u> na	Bathroom
Ghāṅs <i>f.</i>	Grass	Gustākḥ	Impertinent
Ghāt <i>f.</i>	Ambush		

H

Hafta	Week;	Hāmēñ (accusative)	Us
	Saturday	Hamēsha	Always
Hajāmat <i>f.</i>	Shaving	Hamla	Attack
Hāl	Account, state	Haṅsnā	To laugh

Har	Every; each	Hāzīr	Present; muster
Haṭānā <i>tr.</i>	To drive away	Hāzīrī	Presence
	To remove	Hifāzat <i>f.</i>	Protection
Haṭnā (<i>Int.</i>)	To get out of the way	Hilānā	To shake
Hāth <i>m.</i>	Hand	Hiran	Buck
Hathyār <i>m.</i>	Weapon, arms	Hisāb	Account
Hawā	Air	Hūshyār	Clever
Hawāī	Aerial	Hūshyārī sē	Cleverly
Hazār	Thousand	Hujūm	Crowd; mob

I

Ijāzat <i>f.</i>	Permission	Ishāra	Sign
Ilm	Knowledge	Is liē	Therefore
Imāndār	Honest	Itne mēñ	Meanwhile
Inām	Reward	Ittifāqan	By chance
Inkār	Refuse	Itwār	Sunday
Iḥāda	Intention	Izzat <i>f.</i>	Honour

J

Jagah <i>f.</i>	Place	Jawāb	Reply
Jagānā <i>tr.</i>	To awaken	Jawān	Young
Jāgnā <i>Int.</i>	To wake oneself	Jēb <i>f.</i>	Pocket
Jahāz	Ship	Jēl <i>f.</i>	Jail
Jau	Oats	Jhandā	Flag (large)
Jalānā <i>tr.</i>	To burn; light	Jhandī <i>f.</i>	Flag (small)
Jalnā <i>Int.</i>	To burn	Jhapaṭnā	To rush
Jama <i>k.</i>	To collect	Jhāfī <i>f.</i>	Bush
Jānnā	To know	Jhaṭkā	Jerk
Jānwar	Animal	Jhūṭ	Falsehood
Jāsūs	Spy	Jhūṭā	Liar

Jīnā	To live; exist	Jurm	Crime; offence
Jitnā	To win	Jurmāna	Fine
Jo kuchh	Wahtever	Jūti f.	Shoe

K

Kab	When	<u>Khālī</u>	empty
Kabhī	Ever	Khānā	To eat; food
Kabhī kabhī	Sometimes	Khāñsī f.	Cough
Kabūtar	Pigeon	Khāñsnā	To cough
Kāfī	Enough	<u>kharāb</u>	Bad
Kahāñ	Where	<u>Kharch</u>	Expense
Kahīñ	Somewhere	<u>Khariḍnā</u>	To buy
Kahnā	To tell, to say	<u>Khat</u>	Letter
Kaī	Several	<u>Khātir</u>	Mind
Kal	Tomorrow	<u>Khātir jama rakhna</u>	To be at one's ease
Kam	Less	<u>Khāwind</u>	Husband
Kām	Work	<u>Khīāl m.</u>	Thought
Kām-chor	Shirker	<u>Khazāna</u>	Treasury
Kamānā	To earn	Khēchnā	To pull; draw
Kāmyāb	Successful	Khēt	Field
Kamzor	Weak	<u>Khilāf</u>	Against
Kanjūs	Miserly	Khirkī f.	Window
Kārtūs	Cartridge	Khodnā	To dig
Kāṭnā	To cut; bite	Khoj	Track
Kaun	Who	Khoj nikālñā	To track
Kaunsā	Which	Khojī	Tracker
Kawwā	Crow	Kholnā	To open
Keh	That	<u>Khūb (adv.)</u>	Well
Kētlī	Kettle	<u>Khūbsūrat</u>	Beautiful
<u>Khabar f.</u>	News	<u>Khuda</u>	God
<u>Khafā</u>	Angry	<u>Khūsh</u>	Happy

<u>Khūshī</u> sē	Happily	Koela	Charcoal
Kiā	What	Koī	Any
Kināra	Bank, shore	Kona	Corner
Kioñ	Why	Koshish f.	Try
Kioñke	Because	Kūāñ	Well
Kirāya	Rent; fare	Kuchh	Some
Kishtī f.	Boat	Kuchh nahīñ	Nothing
Kiskā	Whose	Kursī	Chair
Kitāb f.	Book	Kutyā	Bitch

L

Lādnā	To load	Lāṭhī f.	Stick
Lafz	Word	Lēkin	But
Lagānā	To put on; apply; affix; attach	Lēṭnā	To lie down
Lañgfā	Lame	Lifāfa	Envelope
Laṛāī f.	Fight	Likhnā	To write
		Log	People
		Lūṭnā	To rob

M

Madad f.	Help	Mana k.	To forbid
Maghrūr	Proud	Mandar m.	Temple (Hindu)
Mahīna	Month	Māñgnā	To ask for
Mahsūl	Tax; duty	Mahñgā	Expensive
Mal	Property	Marammat f.	Repairs
Mālik	Owner	Marnā	To die
Malnā	To rub	Mārnā	To strike; hit
Mālūm h.	To be known	Mār ḍalnā	To kill
Mālūm k.	To find out	Mash-hūr	Well known
Māñ f.	Mother	Mashīn f.	Machine
Māñ bāp	Parents	Masjid f.	Mosque

Mazāq	Joke	Moza	Sock
Mazbūt	Strong	Muāfi <i>f.</i>	Pardon
Mazdūr	Labourer	Muāfiq <i>f.</i>	According to
Mazdūrī <i>f.</i>	Wages	Mujhē (Accusative)	Me
Mehmān	Guest	Mulāheza	Inspection
Mehnat <i>f.</i>	Hard work	Mulk	Country
Mehrbān <i>adj.</i>	Kind	Mulzim	Accused
Mehrbānī sē	Kindly	Mumkin	Possible
Mēla	Fair	Muñh	Mouth
Mithāī <i>f.</i>	Sweets	Murghī <i>f.</i>	Hen
Mizāj	Temperament	Musāfir	Traveller
Mol lēnā	To buy	Mushkil <i>adj.</i>	Difficult
Mor	Peacock	Musibat <i>f.</i>	Misfortune
Morcha	Trench	Muskurānā	To smile

N

Nāch <i>m.</i>	Dance	Namāz <i>f.</i>	Prayer, service
Nahānā	To bathe	Narm	Soft
Nahr <i>f.</i>	Canal	Nayā	New
Naql <i>k.</i>	To copy	Nazdīk	Near
Naqsha <i>m.</i>	Map	Nīchā	Low
Nāl <i>f.</i>	Shoe (horse)	Nīchē	Under
Nālband	Shoe smith	Nikalnā	To come out
Nālī <i>f.</i>	Barrel, drain	Nikāl nā	To take out; to turn out
Namak	Salt	Nirkh	Rate
Namak harām	Traitor; disloyal	Nishān	Mark; sign

O

Ohda	Rank; grade	Ola	Hail
Ohdēdār	Official	Os <i>f.</i>	Dew

P

Pahāṭ	Mountain	Paṭnā	To fall
Pahchānnā	To recognise	Parsoṅ	Day after tomorrow
Pehannā	To put on; to wear	Pasand <i>k.</i>	To like
Pahrā	Duty (watch)	Pata	Address; trace
Pahuñchnā	To reach	Patta	Leaf
Pahuñchānā	To make reach	Pat-thar	Stone
Paidal	On foot	Pēṭ	Tree
Pakaṭnā	To catch	Pēshāb	Urine
Pakkā	Ripe	Pēshāb <i>k.</i>	To pass urine
Palaṅg	Bed	Pēshgī <i>f.</i>	Advance (pay)
Paṭṭan <i>f.</i>	Regiment	Pēṭī <i>f.</i>	Belt
Pār	Across	Phailnā <i>Int.</i>	To spread
Paṭaus	Neighbourhood	Phailānā <i>tr.</i>	To spread
Paṭausī	Neighbour	Phaṭnā	To burst
Parda	Curtain	Phal <i>m.</i>	Fruit
Parē	Beyond	Phēḥknā	To throw
Paṭhnā	To read	Phir	Again; then
Phir bhī	Even then; still	Pūchhnā	To ask
Phūl	Flower	Pukārnā <i>v. tr.</i>	To shout
Pīāla	Cup	Pul	Bridge
Pīnā	To drink	Pūlis <i>f.</i>	Police
Pītal	Brass	Purānā	Old

Q

Qabar <i>f.</i>	Grave	Qānūn	Law
Qabrustān	Cemetery <i>m.</i>	Qarīb	Near
Qadam	Pace; step	Qarz	Debt; loan
Qaiñchī <i>f.</i>	Scissors	Qasāī	Butcher
Qamīz <i>f.</i>	Shirt	Qasūr	Fault

Qila	Fort	Qismat <i>f.</i>	Luck
Qīmat <i>f.</i>	Price; Value	Qulī	Coolie
Qīmtī	Valuable <i>adj.</i>		

R

Raddī	Unserviceable	Rawāna <i>k.</i>	To start; despatch
Rāē <i>f.</i>	Opinion	Rawāṅgī <i>f.</i>	Departure
Rahnā	To live; dwell	Risāla	Cavalry
Rakhnā	To put; keep	Rishta	Relation
Rasad <i>f.</i>	Supplies	Rishtedār	Relative
Rasīd <i>f.</i>	Receipt	Rishwat <i>f.</i>	Bribe
Rassī <i>f.</i>	Rope	Roknā	To stop
Rāsta	Way	Ronā	To weep
Rāt <i>f.</i>	Night	Roz	Day
Rawāna <i>h.</i>	To set out		

S

Sabab	Reason	Sandūq <i>m.</i>	Box
Sabaq	Lesson	Sāñp	Snake
Sach-chā	True	Safak <i>f.</i>	Road
Sadma	Shock	Sarhad <i>f.</i>	Frontier
Safar	Journey	Sarkār <i>f.</i>	Government
Safēd	White	Sochnā	To ponder; think
Safēdī <i>f.</i>	White-wash	Sonā <i>v. tr.</i>	To sleep
Saiñtis	Thirty-seven	Sonā	Gold
Sāis	Syce	Subah <i>f.</i>	Morning
Sāl	Year	Sūjan <i>f.</i>	Swelling
Salūk	Treatment	Sūjnā	To swell
Samajhnā	Understand	Sikhānā	To teach
Samjhāna	To explain	Sikhnā	To learn
Sāmān	Things	Sīnā	To sew
Sāmnē	In front of		

Sirf	Only	Shēr	Tiger
Sīti <i>f.</i>	Whistle	Shikāyat <i>f.</i>	Complaint
Sīti bajānā	To shistle	Shor	Noise
Sarkārī	Official	Sīāhī <i>f.</i>	Ink
Sastā	Cheap	Sifārish	Recommen- dation
Sāth	With	Sūkhā	Dry
Sau	Hundred	Sūkhnā <i>v. Int.</i>	To get dried
Saudāgar	Merchant	Sūkhānā	To dry
Sawērē	Early	Sulah <i>f.</i>	Peace
Sāyā	Shade	Sunnā	To hear
Sazā <i>f.</i>	Punishment	Surāgh	Clue
Sāzish <i>f.</i>	Conspiracy	Sūraj	The Sun
Shādī <i>f.</i>	Marriage	Sūrākh	Hole
Shahr	City	Suraṅg	Tunnel
Shak	Doubt	Sutlī	String
Shām <i>f.</i>	Evening		
Sharāb <i>f.</i>	Wine		

T

Tairnā	To swim	Tāṅg	Narrow
Taiyār	Ready	Tāṅg <i>f.</i>	Leg
Taiyār <i>h.</i>	To be ready	Tankhwah <i>f.</i>	Pay
Tāga	Thread	Tāqat <i>f.</i>	Strength
Taqsim <i>k.</i>	To divide	Tāqatwar	Strong
Tālā	Lock	Taklīf	Trouble
Tālāb	Tank	Taqriban	Nearly
Talāsh <i>f.</i>	Search	Tār	Wire
Tamāsha	Sight	Taraf <i>f.</i>	Side
Tambākū	Tobacco	Tarah <i>f.</i>	Manner
Tambīh <i>k.</i>	To warn	Tārīf <i>f.</i>	Praise
Tambū	Tent	Tārīqa	Method
Tamgha	Medal	Tārīkh <i>f.</i>	Date

Tārkol	Tar	Ṭika	Inoculation
Tasdīq <i>f.</i>	Verification	Ṭika lagānā	To inoculate
Tasdīq <i>k.</i>	To verify	Ṭirpāl <i>f.</i>	Tarpaulin
Tasma	Strap	Ṭoknā	To challenge
Taswīr <i>f.</i>	Picture	Ṭokrā <i>m.</i>	Basket (large)
Tēz	Fast; sharp	Ṭokrī <i>f.</i>	Basket (small)
Thakānā	To tire	Tolnā	To weight
Thaknā	To be tired	Top <i>f.</i>	Gun
Thakā hūā	Tired	Ṭopī <i>f.</i>	Cap
Ṭhēka	Contract	Top <u>Khāna</u>	Artillery
Ṭhēkēdār	Contractor	Tofnā	To break
Ṭhokar khānā	To stumble	Ṭukfā	Piece
Ṭhokar mār nā	To kick	Tumhēñ	accusative You
Thūknā	To spit	Ṭūṭnā	To be broken

U

Uchhāl nā	To toss	Usē	(accusative)
Ummīd <i>f.</i>	Hope		Him
Umr <i>f.</i>	Age	Ustarā	Razor
Uñchā	High	Utarnā <i>v. Intr.</i>	To get down
Unhēñ	Them	Utanā <i>v. tr.</i>	To take off
(accusative)		Uthrnā <i>v. tr.</i>	To raise; to bear; to lift
Ūpar	Above	Uṭhānā <i>v. tr.</i>	To rise
Uṭ nā	To fly	Uzr	Excuse

W

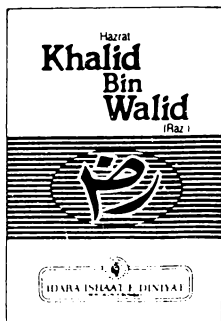
Wada	Promise	Wāpas	Back
Waghaira	Etcetera	Wardī <i>f.</i>	Uniform
Wahāñ	There	Warna	Otherwise
Wakīl or Vakīl	Pleader	Warzish <i>f.</i>	Exercise (physical)
Waq̃t	Time	Wazan	Weight

Y

Yā	Or	Yaqīn	Certainty
Yahāñ	Here	Yānī	That is to say

Z

Zabān <i>f.</i>	Language; tongue	Zanjīr <i>f.</i>	Chain
Zabānī	Verbal	Zarūr	Surely; certainly
Zakhm	Wound	Zāt <i>f.</i>	Caste
Zakhmī	Wounded	Zēwar	Ornaments
Zālim	Tyrant	Ziāda	More
Zamānat <i>f.</i>	Bail	Zīn	Saddle
Zāmin	Surety	Zīnda	Alive
Zamīn <i>f.</i>	Land	Zulm	Tyranny

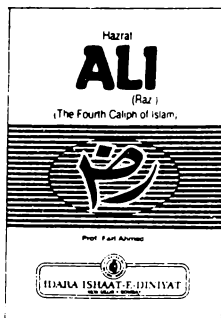


Hazrat Khalid Bin Walid ISBN 81-7101-006-7 PP 112

Hazrat KHALID BIN WALID
(Raz.)

By: Prof. FAZL AHMAD

The book presents a biographical account of the eventful life of Khalid bin Walid (Raz.) from the days of his bitter enmity of Islam to his turning into one of the greatest warriors and Generals of Islam. The lucidity and clarity of expression is all that makes this book one of the most readable of its kind.

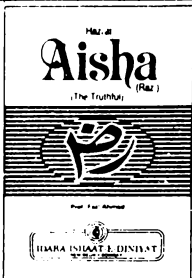


Hazrat Ali ISBN 81-7101-004-0 PP 96

Hazrat ALI (Raz.)
(The Fourth Caliph of Islam)

By: Prof. FAZL AHMAD

Hazrat Ali (Raz.) is eminent by his joining the fold of Islam at a very tender age which reflects his instinctual affinity with Islam. He was gifted with extraordinary spiritual and intellectual powers coupled with indomitable bravery and courage. This booklet presents a readable biographical account of the fourth Caliph of Islam about whom the Holy Prophet (PBUH) said: "I am the city of knowledge and Ali is its gateway".



Hazrat Aisha ISBN 81-7101-005-9 PP 128

Hazrat AISHA (Raz.)

(The Truthful)

By Prof. FAZL AHMAD

Aisha's (Raz.) life demonstrates in no ambiguous terms to what glorious heights a Muslim woman can rise. Before the advent of Islam a woman enjoyed no status in society. Islam suddenly raised her to the unprecedented heights of human dignity. Islam insisted that a woman should retain the softness and the purity intrinsic to her nature while being free to attain the summits of human achievements. Aisha's (Raz.) example shows how this can be a reality. She was strict in observing the veil and the rules of the Islamic moral code and yet she played a vital role in the social, religious and political life of her people. The book chronicles in lucid and readable style all that made Hazrat Aisha (Raz.) an everlasting symbol of the glory of womanhood.



Hazrat Aisha ISBN 81-7101-005-9 PP 128

Hazrat AISHA (Raz.)

(The Truthful)

By Prof. FAZL AHMAD

Aisha's (Raz.) life demonstrates in no ambiguous terms to what glorious heights a Muslim woman can rise. Before the advent of Islam a woman enjoyed no status in society. Islam suddenly raised her to the unprecedented heights of human dignity. Islam insisted that a woman should retain the softness and the purity intrinsic to her nature while being free to attain the summits of human achievements. Aisha's (Raz.) example shows how this can be a reality. She was strict in observing the veil and the rules of the Islamic moral code and yet she played a vital role in the social, religious and political life of her people. The book chronicles in lucid and readable style all that made Hazrat Aisha (Raz.) an everlasting symbol of the glory of womanhood.



I.S.B.N. 81-7101-186-1

Rs. 40